

Тетяна Венкель

Англійська мова

**для студентів
вищих навчальних закладів**

Частина 2

**Чернівці
Золоті литаври
2013**

ББК 81.432.1-923.7
УДК 811.111(075.8)

Англійська мова для студентів вищих навчальних закладів.
Част. 2 / Укл.: Венкель Т. В. – Чернівці, Золоті литаври, 2013. –

Посібник розрахований на студентів 1 курсу вищих навчальних закладів, які мають середній рівень підготовки з англійської мови, тобто засвоїли базовий курс граматики, мають лексичний запас із загальнопобутової тематики, вміють висловлюватися в межах вивчених тем, а також сприймати на слух англомовний текст, вимовлений у середньому темпі. Мета посібника: 1) забезпечити збільшення активного словникового запасу завдяки розгалуженій системі лексико-граматичних вправ; 2) активізувати навички читання та усного мовлення.

Матеріали посібника можуть бути використані слухачами курсів англійської мови та широким колом осіб, що вивчають англійську мову.

© Венкель Т. В., 2013

Module 3

Unit 3.1. Shopping

Vocabulary: Shopping

Introductory reading

1. Read the text and find out the meaning of the target words (in bold type).

Shopping is a very important part of life, but **shoppers** (buyers) are sometimes confused because of advertising, a wider choice of **goods** than ever before, and new places to shop. Nowadays there is a great variety of **stores (shops)** with attractive **shop windows (show-cases/window displays)** for you **to buy/to purchase** ['pætʃəs] whatever you need. So, you can buy things produced by a certain company in a **chain store** or a **company store**; you can do your shopping in a **convenience store** at any time you need as it works till late at night. It is a real bargain (very cheap) for you to shop in a **discount store** as it **sells** goods at lower **prices**. You will also spend less money if you buy in a **warehouse store** (a shop selling goods **in bulk**) rather than in a **retail store** (a shop selling goods **by the piece**). Stores are mostly **self-service** nowadays.

Department stores are good places to shop if you need quite a lot of things to buy as they **stock** a wide range of goods. There you can find many **departments (sections): perfumery and cosmetics** (selling scents/perfume, cologne, toilet water and makeup like lipstick, eye shadows, mascara etc.), **drapery/textiles** (selling cloth), **knit-wear** (selling knitted clothes, especially sweaters), **underwear** (selling things worn under the outer clothes), **hosiery** (selling stockings, socks, and knitted underclothing), **linens** (selling bed linen like sheets, blanket covers, pillowcases), **jewellery (US jewelry)** (selling bracelets, rings, necklaces, etc., made of precious metals and stones), **stationery** (selling writing materials, such as paper, envelopes, pens, pencils, ink, rulers, etc., as well as office supplies), **haberdashery** ['hæbdəʃrɪ] (selling different small **items** of everyday use and also pins, ribbon, needles, and similar wares used for sewing), **millinery** (selling hats), **household goods** (selling things needed in household and chemicals

like detergents, cleansers, etc.), **crockery and glassware** (selling spoons, forks, knives, plates, dishes, articles made of glass), **household appliances/consumer electronics** (selling electric devices used in household), **footwear** (selling shoes, boots, high boots, sandals, etc. and accessories like shoe polish, shoehorns, etc.) and some others. If you are looking for a skirt and a top **to go with** (to match) it, you'd go to "**Separates**". You'll find shorts or T-shirts in "**Leisurewear**" and a nightdress in "**Nightwear**". In "**Accessories**" they sell belts, gloves, and purses. You can enjoy attractively designed displays and see many shoppers browsing through **trendy** (stylish/fashionable) clothes in the **ladieswear** and **menswear**.

Various types of retail stores that specialise in the selling goods of one type include **bookstores**, **boutiques** [*'bu:ˈti:k*], **candy shops**, **gift shops** (selling souvenirs and presents), **ironmonger's (US hardware stores)** (selling household appliances and computers), **hobby stores**¹ and **pet stores**. Other stores such as **big-box stores** (big self-service warehouse stores, very simply designed (looking like a big box), selling a great variety of goods at lower prices than in other stores), **hypermarkets**, **general stores** (department stores usually in small towns and villages), **dollar stores/five-and-dime stores** (selling very cheap goods at the same price each item) sell a wider variety of products not related to each other. Larger commercial zones can be found in many cities. **Shopping hubs** (shopping centres) are collection of stores, that is, grouping of several businesses. Typical examples include **shopping malls** (large enclosed shopping centres), **fairs** (a regular assembly at a specific place for the sale of goods), **flea markets** (open-air markets selling cheap and often second-hand goods) and **bazaars** (shops where a large variety of goods is sold).

We often buy fresh fruit, vegetables and greens in an **open-air market**. There also may be a few **booths** (a stall for the display or sale of goods) and **kiosks** (a small sometimes movable booth from which cigarettes, newspapers, light refreshments, etc., are sold) in your neighbourhood, in which you can buy different items.

If you want to buy some clothes or shoes for yourself, you will need **to try on** the things they have in the line to see if the thing **fits**

¹ магазини типу "Зроби сам" або "Умілі руки", де продають все необхідне для рукоділля та виготовлення чогось самотужки

you perfectly (is of the right size). However it may be quite boring to wait if the **fitting room** is occupied. It is also useful to **check out** the **racks (shelves)** with the sign "**sale**". You can sometimes find some super buys among the things that are offered in sales. Feeling cheered up by your new purchase, don't forget to keep the **receipt**, in case an item turns out to be faulty. You'll need the receipt if you want to **exchange** the item or **have your money refunded**.

If you are a **bargain-hunter**, it is good to try **clothes markets**. They often don't have the high **overheads** of town shops and can therefore keep prices lower, though they can stock **substandard goods** (of lower quality). Besides you can **haggle/bargain** (try to make the trader sell you something at a lower price) over (about) the prices there. Some shops sell second-hand goods. There are also **non-profit shops**, commonly known as *thrift stores* in the USA or *charity shops* in the UK, to which people donate goods. In **give-away shops** goods can be taken for free.

There are usually crowds of shoppers in all the stores before a holiday. Department stores are swarming with last-minute shoppers, so you should buy all the gifts beforehand not to **queue** [*'kju:*] (*Am. to stand in line*) for half an hour at the **checkout till**. Sometimes queuing can be fun as from everywhere you can hear people saying, 'They have **sold out** all the scarves', or 'They have **run out of** that cream'. You inevitably get involved in exchanging remarks with other people in the queue or with **salesgirls (shop assistants)**. Sometimes the talk gets so interesting that when the **cashier**, after **running her pen over barcodes** and adding up the prices, asks you whether you want to **pay in cash** or **by credit card**, it takes you by surprise.

We have to buy foodstuffs every day, don't we? It is worth shopping for food in modern **supermarkets** as it saves your time. There are different departments there: **grocery** (selling different foodstuffs), **dry groceries** (selling sugar, flour, cereals, salt and other **ready-packed** foodstuffs), **bakery** (selling bread, cakes, etc.), **confectionery** (selling sweets), **meat and fowl**, **frozen foods/convenience foods** (semi-prepared foods fast-frozen), **dairy products** (selling foods made of milk), **greengrocery** (selling fresh vegetables, fruit and greens). It means that and you can buy everything in one place, choosing from thousands of attractively packed products laid out on practically endless racks and **counters**. You collect everything you

need and put into a **trolley/shopping cart** or a **wire basket**. Then you pay at the checkout till.

Some people still prefer to do their shopping in small shops. The daily shopping route of some housewives includes visits to the baker's, butcher's, grocer's, greengrocer's, **fishmonger's** (a shop selling fish and seafood) and a dairy shop. In the end of the route their bags are full of different products. Certainly it takes much of the housewife's time. The explanation for this housewives' craze is very simple. In every shop their buys are **weighed, wrapped up**, their money taken and the **change** given back. Meanwhile they can have a chat with salesgirls about their weak hearts and broken hopes. Actually the simple truth is: a visit to a good shop is worth two visits to a good doctor.

The last ten years have been a wild time on the Internet, especially when it comes to **online shopping**. With modern technology such as television and telephone and the Internet, users could be described as *home shopping* through online retail stores. Typically a consumer could make purchases through online shopping, **shopping channels, mail order**, etc. **Street vendors** and distributors may come to your homes or offices to suggest goods. There are also **vending machines/slot machines** (sell small items like candy bars, cigarettes, cans of beer or cola, etc.) everywhere. These modern ways of shopping allow us to save our time.

2. Fill in the chart using the information from Ex. 1.

Word	Ukrainian Equivalent
shopper	
online shopping	
mail order	
counter	
trolley	
wire basket	
shop window	
goods	
substandard goods	
item	
fitting room	
rack	

receipt	
ready-packed	
sale	
bargain-hunter	
salesgirl/man	
checkout till	
cashier	
price	
change	
by piece	
in bulk	
<i>store (shop):</i>	
-retail store	
-warehouse store	
-discount store	
-company store	
-chain store	
-dollar store	
-general store	
-hardware store	
-pet store	
-big-box store	
-gift shop	
-candy shop	
-boutique	
-bookstore	
-fishmonger's	
-non-profit shop	
-give-away shop	
-shopping hub	
-shopping mall	
-bazaar	
-flea market	
-fair	
-clothes market	
-booth	
-kiosk	

-department store	
<i>departments (sections):</i>	
-perfumery and cosmetics	
-drapery/textiles	
-knit-wear	
-underwear	
-hosiery	
-linens	
-jewellery	
-stationery	
-haberdashery	
-grocery	
-dry groceries	
-millinery	
-household goods	
-crockery and glassware	
-household electronics	
-footwear	
-bakery	
-confectionery	
-meat and fowl	
-convenience foods	
-dairy products	
-greengrocery	
trendy	
to try on	
to go with/to match	
to fit	
to sell (sold, sold)	
to sell out	
to check out	
to buy (bought, bought)	
to exchange	
to have money refunded	
to stock	
to haggle	
to queue	

to run (ran, run) out of	
to run the pen over barcodes	
to pay (paid, paid) in cash	
to pay by credit card	
to weigh	
to wrap up	
street vendor	
vending machine	

3. Match the words and their explanations.

1.	haberdashery	a)	a shop selling sugar, flour, cereals, salt and other ready-packed foodstuffs
2.	frozen foods/ convenience foods	b)	a shop selling fish and seafood
3.	have your money refunded	c)	a store selling different small items of everyday use and also pins, ribbon, needles, and similar wares used for sewing
4.	in bulk	d)	department stores usually in small towns and villages
5.	to queue	e)	a shop selling semi-prepared foods fast-frozen
6.	boutique	f)	a store selling writing materials, such as paper, envelopes, pens, pencils, ink, rulers, etc., as well as office supplies
7	checkout till	g)	goods of lower quality below the required standard
8.	hosiery	h)	a store selling things produced by a certain company
8.	general stores	i)	to get the money back, when an article purchased is unsatisfactory
10.	fishmonger's	j)	in large quantities
11.	trolley	k)	a shop selling stockings, socks, and knitted underclothing

12.	stationery	l)	to put on the thing before buying it to see if it fits in size
13.	to haggle/to bargain	m)	to stand in a line while waiting
14.	receipt	n)	a small shop selling fashionable clothes and accessories
15.	run out of	o)	a counter in a supermarket, where customers pay
16.	chain store/company store	p)	a wheeled cart pushed by hand used for moving goods in a supermarket
17.	give-away shop	q)	to try to make the trader sell at a lower price
18.	dry groceries	r)	a printed document proving that payment for goods has been made
19.	to try on	s)	a shop from which goods can be taken for free
20.	substandard goods	t)	to exhaust a supply of something

4. What do we call:

1) a big shop selling things of different kinds; 2) one of the series of the similar shops owned by one firm; 3) a shop working till late at night; 4) a large wholesale store; 5) a store selling goods in small quantities or by the piece; 6) a shop selling things at a price below usual or true value; 7) a shop selling writing materials and office supplies; 8) a shop from which goods can be taken for free; 9) a very large supermarket; 10) gathering of buyers and sellers of provisions, livestock, etc. usually in the open air.

5. Substitute the italicised words with their synonyms:

1. What's the size of those lovely shoes over there in the *window display*? 2. My mother prefers to buy foodstuffs in small suburban *shops*. 3. Mary went to the confectionary *department* and put a few big boxes of chocolates in her trolley. 4. John is an experienced salesman; he works at the *household appliances*. 5. My wife asked the *shop assistant* about the price of the dress. 6. My brother has been saving money for years. He is eager *to purchase* a

new house. 7. The shop-man said the jeans were always *fashionable*.
8. This new dark brown bag wonderfully *goes with* my street oxfords.
9. I am not very good at cooking so I mostly buy *convenience foods*.
10. The things that hadn't been sold by the end of the season were sent to the nearest *non-profit store*.

6. *Say what you can buy at:*

1) the household appliances dept.; 2) the stationer's; 3) the jeweller's; 4) the grocer's; 5) the greengrocer's; 6) the dairy; 7) the hosiery; 8) the baker's; 9) the butcher's; 10) the haberdashery 11) an antique shop; 12) an art shop; 13) a bookshop; 14) a boutique; 15) a florist's/flower shop; 16) a furniture shop; 17) a gift shop; 18) a hi-fi store; 19) an ironmonger's; 20) an optician's; 21) a pet shop; 22) a photographic shop; 23) a sports shop; 24) a toy shop; 25) a non-profit shop.

7. *Where do you go if you want to buy...?*

1) a pencil; 2) a pair of socks; 3) apples; 4) a lady's hat; 5) a piece of beef; 6) a loaf of bread; 7) a book; 8) a pair of sneakers; 9) a shoe-horn; 10) perfume; 11) a pair of shoes; 12) a T-shirt; 13) a candy-bar; 14) a bracelet; 15) sugar; 16) a designer's dress; 17) stockings; 18) buttons, zips; 19) fabrics; 20) a man's suit; 21) pyjamas; 22) a hat; 23) a sweater; 24) a TV set; 25) office supplies.

8. *What do these people sell? Consult the dictionary if necessary*

1) a baker; 2) a milliner; 3) a real estate agent; 4) a confectioner; 5) a butcher; 6) a jeweller; 7) a florist; 8) a newsagent; 9) an antique dealer; 10) a greengrocer; 11) a fishmonger; 12) an antique dealer; 13) a milkman; 14) stationer; 15) street vendor.

9. *Choose the appropriate word:*

1. At the perfumery department women can buy...

a) *linen*; b) *fur hat*; c) *scents*; d) *cassette*.

2. In winter women usually put on:

a) *a bathing suit*; b) *a jacket*; c) *an apron*; d) *a fur coat*.

3. When one wants to try something on he goes to the:

a) *fitting-room*; b) *bathroom*; c) *dining-room*; d) *closet*.

4. You have been invited to the birthday party and, of course, you want to look elegant. So you put on:
 - a) *light summer shorts*; b) *tuxedo*;
 - c) *swimming trunks*; d) *pyjamas*.
5. You are going to the picnic with your friends. What kind of shoes have you chosen?
 - a) *platform shoes*; b) *evening sandals*;
 - c) *high-heeled shoes*; d) *trainers (sneakers)*.
6. It is raining cats and dogs, but you must go out. You have nothing to do but put on:
 - a) *a T-shirt*; b) *shorts*; c) *a raincoat*; d) *a tracksuit*.
7. You want to buy some sugar and flour. You'll go to:
 - a) *greengrocery dept.*; b) *haberdashery dept.*;
 - c) *hosiery dept.*; d) *dry groceries*.
8. At the Electric Appliances Dept. of the supermarket one can buy:
 - a) *a fur hat*; b) *scents*; c) *a video recorder*; d) *underwear*.
9. You need some writing paper. You go to:
 - a) *haberdashery dept.*; b) *millinery dept.*;
 - c) *stationery dept.*; d) *knitwear dept.*
10. At the fishmonger's one can buy:
 - a) *flowers*; b) *sweets*; c) *books*; d) *fish and seafood*.

Reading

Pre-Reading Activities

Answer the following questions:

1. Do you live on budget? Do you succeed in planning your own finance?
2. How often do you usually go shopping? Is it a pleasure or a boring duty for you? Why?
3. Do you use any discount or saving cards when shopping for food? Why/Why not? Do they help to save money?
4. Is it a common practice for you to make shopping lists? Why/Why not?
5. Do you buy things on sales? When do shops usually have "sales"? Why?
6. Are you a bargain hunter? What bargains do you usually pick up in local shops? Are they worth your effort?

10. a) Read and translate the text.

Where and How to Shop Cheaply

Shopping is a part of our daily life. And we have to deal with it whether we like it or not. To many, shopping is considered a kind of

activity in which one visits stores in search of a suitable product to buy. To some "window shopping" is preferable, that is, browsing shops with no intent to buy, possibly just to pass, or to plan a later purchase. To others shopping is a task of inconvenience and vexation. And there are people who go from store to store looking for goods of better quality and lower price. Those don't worry about the time they spend shopping.

There are multiple categories of stores which sell a selected set of goods or services. Usually based on the income of the shopper, they can be classified from cheap to pricey. It is the store manager's job to figure out ways to make us spend. Using creative marketing or providing samples of delicious foods, every method has been used to tempt us. If not careful, you will overspend and not shop responsibly. In these economic times, it is important to be able to shop sensibly. It is extremely important when you shop for food as it is a necessity we cannot live without.

When you do that big supermarket shop, it's very easy to get carried away. The freedom to buy, cook and eat exactly what you want for every meal is often a little too tempting and, like a kid in a sweet shop, you might end up putting absolutely everything you fancy in the shopping trolley. However, it's important to remember that you can hardly eat so much food. While cans and dried goods will keep for a long time, fresh groceries soon start to deteriorate and you'll quickly end up with a kitchen full of rotting vegetables if you're not careful.

If you want to make the most of your limited funds, it's good to remember that the supermarket isn't the only place to buy food. While it's great to use the big stores for all those half price specials and free offers, you should try to be clever about where you shop. As a student you have not so much time on your hands to do your shopping but you should really try to be careful about your budget. It's really worth making the extra effort to hunt out those elusive bargains!

For example, ethnic specialist shops or delicatessen (deli) are a great place to go for more unusual fruit and vegetables. You'll also find it much cheaper to buy things like spices and rice here as they are sold in far larger quantities than in supermarkets, so you'll save by buying in bulk. Your local greengrocer is also a good place to shop. Fruit and vegetables are best eaten as fresh as possible so if you have a local shop, then buy what you need every couple of days on your way back

from college. Farmers' markets are springing up all over the place, so look out for any near you. This is where you should buy all those great seasonal British products and you should be able to pick up some bargains if you choose the right things.

Here are a few quick tips on how to shop economically but still have a deliciously varied diet.

1. Before going to the supermarket check your refrigerator and pantry for ingredients you already have and therefore, do not need to buy. Write a shopping list and stick to it. Don't go shopping when you're hungry: always go just after you've eaten and you'll be less likely to cram the trolley full of unnecessary items.

2. Take a calculator to the supermarket with you and add up everything as you go. That way, you can really stick to your budget and you won't have any nasty surprises at the checkout.

3. Choose seasonal fruit and vegetables where possible and choose dishes that will make the most of these. Only buy what you know you're going to be able to eat. Besides, it would be useful to compare prices of the different items in order to get the biggest bang. A lot of times the off-brand items are much cheaper than the name brand.

4. It is always a good idea to buy the items you use most in bulk. These products will last longer, therefore you will not have to purchase them as often. Frequently used items such as toiletries should be purchased in bulk whenever possible. Moreover, if it's cheaper to buy in bulk, then plan some meals that can be made and frozen for later use.

5. Use local market stalls and traders for your fruit and vegetables; if you go towards the end of the day you'll pick up plenty of bargains. It's worth taking advantage of bargains. Remember, bargains and budgets go hand in hand. Therefore, if your grocery store is offering a "buy one", get one free deal on a favorite item; by all means take advantage of that savings. You can use one now and save the other one for another time.

6. Use your savings or discount cards. Many grocery stores offer VIP (very important person), VIC (very important customer) or VIS (very important shopper) savings cards. You can usually pick up an application for these savings cards in the store. There are many benefits to signing up for these retail oriented saving programs. You can easily find the discounted items, because they will be marked accordingly for your viewing pleasure while shopping. You will be

delighted to see how much you saved by using your discount card versus what you would have spent without it. Every little bit saved counts when you're on a budget.

b) Learn the following words.

Vexation – невдоволення, роздратування; multiple – численний; income – прибуток; pricey – дорогий; to figure out – з'ясувати, зрозуміти; to tempt – спокушати; to get carried away – захоплювати, змушувати втратити самоконтроль; to fancy – уявляти, дуже хотіти; to deteriorate – псуватися; to hunt – полювати; elusive – невловимий, швидкоплинний; ethnic specialist shops – магазин етнічних продуктів (наприклад, таких, що властиві для певних національних кухонь); spring up – виникати; bang – значна знижка в ціні; off-brand – товари невідомих торгових марок; trader – гуртовий торговець; "buy one" – вид заохочувального продажу, коли до одного продукту, що купується, пропонується ще один в подарунок; sign up for – записатися, зареєструватися; versus – (лат.) проти.

11. Find in the text words similar in meaning to the following:

1) annoyance; 2) to seduce; 3) a dealer; 4) expensive; 5) a cheaply bought thing; 6) to understand; 7) to become worse in quality; 8) profit; 9) component; 10) against.

12. Find in the text the English equivalents for the following Ukrainian words and phrases.

1) одержати найбільшу знижку; 2) заощаджувати купуючи гуртом; 3) обмежені кошти; 4) легко втратити самоконтроль; 5) кілька днів; 6) розглядання вітрин магазинів; 7) порівнювати ціни; 8) враховується кожна заощаджена дрібничка; 9) дотримуватися бюджету; 10) як дитина в кондитерському магазині.

13. Find in the text sentences with the following expressions and read them aloud. Translate them into Ukrainian and let your classmates translate them back into English without a textbook.

1) the items you use mostly in bulk; 2) you will overspend; 3) very important shopper; 4) more unusual fruit and vegetables; 5) a few quick tips; 6) take advantage of that savings; 7) to get the biggest

bang; 8) browsing shops with no intent to buy; 9) seasonal fruit and vegetables; 10) to cram the trolley.

14. Put in the missing prepositions if necessary.

1. Farmers' markets are springing ... all over the place, so look ... any near you. 2. There are many benefits to signing ... these retail oriented saving programs. 3. Write a shopping list and stick ... it. 4. It is always a good idea to buy the items you use most ... bulk. 5. You should try to be clever ... where you shop. 6. That way, you can really stick ... your budget and you won't have any nasty surprises ... the checkout. 7. You can use one ... now and save the other one ... another time. 8. You can usually pick ... an application ... these savings cards ... the store. 9. And there are people who go ... store ... store looking ... goods ... better quality and lower price. 10. You'll quickly end ... a kitchen full ... rotting vegetables if you're not careful.

15. Give a talk on the subject "How to Shop Sensibly" (See Ex. 11). Make use of the following words and phrases from the box below.

to be a devoted shopper; to afford; to be a spendthrift/a big spender;
to be extravagant; to spend/waste money on; to cost the earth; I
advise you to ...; (I think) you'd better/should ...; Why don't you ...;
It might be a good idea to ...; Have you thought of ...; I wouldn't
advise you to ...; You'd better not...

Grammar Revision: The Article

16. Insert a or an if necessary.

1. Do you take ... sugar in ... coffee? – I used to, but now I'm on ... diet. I'm trying to lose ... weight. 2. It costs fifty-five and ... half pence and I've only got ... fifty pence piece. – You can pay by ... cheque here. – But can I write ... cheque for ... fifty-five and ... half pence? 3. ... Mr. Smith is ... old customer and ... honest man. – Why do you say that? Has he been accused of ... dishonesty? 4. I'm not ... wage-earner; I'm ... self-employed man. I have ... business of my own. – Then you're not ... worker; you're ... capitalist! 5. I want ... assistant with ... knowledge of ... French and ... experience of ... office routine. 6. I see that your house is built of ... wood. Are you insured against ... fire? 7. I'll pay you ... hundred ... week. It's not ...

enormous salary but after all you are ... completely unskilled man. 8. If you kept ... graph (*γραφή*) you could see at ... glance whether you were making ... profit or ... loss. 9. I have ... little money left; let's have dinner in ... restaurant. 10. Would it be ... trouble to you to buy me ... newspaper on your way home?

*17. Insert **the** if necessary.*

1. ... youngest boy has just started going to ... school; ... eldest boy is at ... college. 2. I went to ... school to talk to ... headmistress. I persuaded her to let Ann give up ... gymnastics and take ... ballet lessons instead. 3. Peter's at ... office but you could get him on ... phone. There's a telephone box just round ... corner. 4. Then he gets up, puts on ... old clothes, has ... breakfast and starts ... work in ... garden. 5. My mother goes to ... church in ... morning, and in ... afternoon goes to visit ... friends. 6. My parents have ... cold meat and ... salad for ... supper, ... winter and ... summer. 7. It's usually safe to walk on ... sand, but here, when ... tide is coming in, ... sand becomes dangerously soft. ... people have been swallowed up by it. 8. When ... Titanic was crossing ... Atlantic she struck an iceberg which tore a huge hole in her bow. ... captain ordered ... crew to help ... passengers into ... boats. 9. There'll always be a conflict between ... old and ... young. ... young people want ... change but ... old people want ... things to stay ... same. 10. You can fool some of ... people all ... time, and all ... people some of ... time; but you cannot fool all ... people all ... time.

18. Insert articles where necessary. Translate the text into Ukrainian:

When I first came to ... England in 1938 I thought I knew ... English very well. In ... Europe my ... English was quite good. In ... England I found ... two difficulties. First: I did not understand ... people. Secondly: ... people didn't understand me. [...]

... first step in my progress was when ... people started understanding me while I still couldn't understand them. This was ... most talkative period in my life. I reached ... stage of ... intelligibility fairly quickly, thanks to ... friend of mine who discovered ... important secret, namely that ... English mutter and mumble. Once we noticed ... thing in ... shop window, which looked like ... sausage and was marked

... pork brawn (зельц із свинини). We decided to buy some for our ... supper. We entered ... shop and I said, "... quarter of ... pork brawn, please". "What was that?" asked ... shopkeeper, looking at me. "... quarter of pork brawn, please", I repeated, still casually. I repeated it again. I repeated it ... dozen times with no ... success. I talked slowly and softly; I talked as one talks to ... deaf and finally I tried babytalk. ... shopkeeper still had ... no idea whether we wanted to buy or sell something. Then my friend had ... brainwave. "Leave it to me", he said and started mumbling under his nose in ... hardly audible manner. The shopkeeper's eyes lit up: "I see", he said happily, "You want ... quarter of ... pork brawn. Why didn't you say so?"

But time passed and my knowledge and understanding of ... English grew slowly, until ... time came when I began to be very proud of my knowledge of ... English. [...] (After G. Mikes)

Speaking

19. Answer the following questions. Motivate your answer.

1. Do you enjoy shopping? Why (not)? 2. Do you enjoy window shopping? Is window shopping typical in this country? 3. Have you ever bought anything from a catalogue or shopped online? What did you buy? 4. Have you ever bought anything from a door-to-door salesman or a street vendor? What was it? 5. Do you go to market? If so, do you always go to the same stalls? 6. When you go shopping what influences your choice more – prices, quality, trade mark, the layout of the shop, etc.? 7. Are you a bargain-hunter? Do you prefer to wait for the sales before buying things? 8. What's the best bargain you have ever bought? 9. Have you ever bought anything on impulse and then regretted it? If so, what was it and what made you buy it? 10. Do you prefer shopping in well-known chainstores or in little boutiques? Why? 11. Where do people haggle over the prices? Have you ever haggled? How successful you were? 12. Are you saving up for anything at the moment? What is it? 13. What ways for a student to save up can you suggest? 14. How has the way of shopping changed over the last 20 years? 15. How do you think the way of shopping will change over the next 20 years? (*Based on Englishclub.com*)

20. a) *Read the Information File:*

What is a shopaholic?

A shopaholic is someone who shops compulsively – someone who cannot stop themselves shopping. Just as an alcoholic craves the next drink, a shopaholic craves the next purchase. For them, money is like a drug: spending it gives them a high.

Is it a 21st century phenomenon? It is easier to be a shopaholic these days than in the past because more people have a disposable income (spending money) nowadays. In addition to that, we now live in a consumer society – there are simply more goods available in the shops than there used to be. However, shopaholics allegedly did exist in the past. Cases such as Marie Antoinette of France are cited. Other figures in history include Jackie Onassis, Imelda Marcos and Princess Diana, all of whom apparently manifested shopaholic symptoms. Although no one knows exactly what causes the disorder it may have its roots in feelings of low self-esteem and insecurity – feelings which are not exclusive to the 21st century.

Is it something that only affects women? According to some studies 1 in 20 people is a shopaholic and 9 out of 10 shopaholics are women. But these statistics can be misleading. Traditionally, if a man buys lots and lots of the same sort of thing he is labelled a ‘collector’ not a shopaholic. Is there really so much difference between, say, William Randolph Hearst (who collected antiques) and President Lincoln’s wife (who collected gloves)? Generally speaking, female compulsive shoppers tend to buy clothes, shoes, make-up and CDs whereas male shopaholics tend to spend on clothes, shoes, electronic equipment and gadgets, CDs and books. Constant bargain-hunting and excessive buying on sales can be considered another form of shopping addiction.

Can shopaholics be treated? As yet there has been little research into this phenomenon. No cure has been found so far and clinical drug trials have revealed only that patients respond equally to the drugs and the placebos. For the time being, the best course of action for a shopaholic seems to be to go shopping with a friend who will help them to control their compulsion to shop to excess.

b) Are you a shopaholic or just a good customer? Answer these questions to find out if you are suffering from the symptoms of a compulsive spending disorder.

1. Do you go shopping to cheer yourself up? 2. Do you frequently get into debt as a result of your shopping sprees? 3. Do you often buy things you will never use? 4. Have you tried to change your

behaviour and failed? 5. Do you think your life would improve if you stopped shopping so much?

c)* *Read the sentences below and write the missing words on a piece of paper. Then take the first letter of each answer and rearrange them to find the hidden word connected with this talking point.*

1. Just as an _____ craves the next drink, a shopaholic craves the next purchase. 2. For them, money is like a drug: spending it _____ them a high. 3. More people have a disposable _____ (spending money) nowadays. 4. There are simply more goods _____ in the shops than there used to be. 5. If a man buys lots and lots of the same sort of thing he is labelled a 'collector' _____ a shopaholic. 6. Male shopaholics tend to spend on clothes, shoes, electronic equipment and gadgets, CDs and _____. 7. As yet there has been little _____ into this phenomenon.

(from: <http://www.englishclub.com>)

d) *Hold a debate concerning your attitude to the problems discussed.*

Reading

Pre-Reading Activities

Answer the following questions:

1) Do people in Ukraine do more shopping nowadays than they used to do in the past? Why? 2) What influences you most when you do your shopping? 3) Do you know people who buy more than they can afford due to the influence of advertising or store managers' tricks?

21. Read the messages from the Internet discussion forum.

What makes people do so much shopping these days?

- by Kathy:

I think advertisement should be the main tactics influencing people go shopping. There is a variety of methods from the newspapers or TV promote the goods using advertisements, which include bargain price, buy one free one, coupons, etc. The people are attracted to buy not only the goods they need but cheaper items that they may not use so far. I think the things that make us shop more and more are those

highly influencing our lives: media, advertisement posters, glamour standards and the like. Seeing all that daily, we wish to have all this stuff too, whether we need it or not. Shops advertise unbeatable offers, with prices slashed or sold at give-away prices. Many shops keep the sales on for a long period of time in order to clear stock ahead of new season arrivals. You can often see signs saying **Clearance Sale** and **Everything must go!** We just want to buy them also for the sake of being better than others, being glamorous and fashionable. So we buy lots of useless things and spend our money.

- *by Emily:*

Why so many people like shopping? There might be such reasons: shopping can let people feel happy, satisfied, relaxed, etc. Some people even think they can not live without shopping. Shopping can also help business activities and economic grow up. I love shopping too. For example, the items I like to buy are cosmetics, clothes, skin care products, etc. These things have irresistible power for women.

- *by Larry:*

I guess people do so much shopping because they consider it a great pastime. While shopping, your mind basically stops thinking. Besides, the influence of internet is also considerable; it makes your shopping easier. Then it is also a tradition. Yesterday I came across a friend in the street and she said she was desperate; she had to buy presents for 20 people!!!! And she didn't know where to start. It's crazy these days.

- *by Natalie:*

As for Russia the answer is simple – people are more well-off than they used to be in the 80's and 90's and they can afford spending lots of money. Besides plenty of supermarkets have been built in large cities and it has become easy to do shopping. I even think that supermarkets changed the way we buy. We just take a shopping cart, walk around a huge shop and buy whatever we see.

- *by Donald:*

Shopping is a kind of entertainment. Of course, nowadays people can purchase anything they want through a great deal of diversified services on the internet and just stay home to order materials they require. However, doing shopping has another significant meaning in which the customers can practically touch, see

all of the necessary stuff on sale. In addition, the atmosphere in the market itself is really attractive for buyers.

But I'm sure that most shopaholics actually have too much free time. They are bored and that makes them go shopping... just to entertain themselves. Anyway, doing shopping is an amusement for meetings, talks. I don't think shopping would be pervasive if people were busy all the time. Some of you will say it's the better life that makes people going much more shopping. Correct! And also it's a well-to-do life that enables people tie them up with interest in their own business rather than shopping. On my part, however, oh I dislike going shopping. It's a waste of time to walk around for many hours just to buy clothes, jewellery, or something like that. My mother or my girlfriend often does this for me.

- *by Jennifer:*

Firstly, people are becoming richer; they have more money to spend. Secondly, products nowadays are more diversified not only in appearance but also in purpose. So people now have more choices. You can see that cell phone companies continually introducing their new designs with new services. Fashion changes according to time. And people don't want to be left behind. They get bored with the old ones and keep their eyes on the newer. Especially for the rich, who have so much money to spend, they always like unique things. To some extend, shopping is a way to show how generous and well-off people are.

- *by Max:*

To my mind, people tend to go shopping not as a result of getting rich and desiring to live and look better. There are very rich people who dislike shopping, they hate bargaining, shuttling in the supermarkets. It depends on the personal features, not on welfare, I think.

(based on: www.englishclub.com)

b) Learn the following words.

To promote – рекламувати; to slash prices – знижувати ціни; give-away prices – дуже низькі ціни; to clear stock – розпродавати весь асортимент товарів; for the sake of – заради; irresistible – той, якому неможливо опиратися; desperate – відчайдушний, у відчаї; well-off (well-to-do) – заможний; pervasive – глибокий, масштабний; to be left behind – відставати; to some extend – певною мірою.

22. Find in the text the English equivalents for the following Ukrainian words and phrases.

1) рекламне оголошення; 2) особисті риси; 3) постійно впроваджувати; 4) економічне зростання; 5) надходження до нового сезону; 6) цілковитий розпродаж; 7) заможне життя; 8) унікальна річ; 9) завантажувати (роботою), спрямовувати зусилля; 10) пропозиція, перед якою не встояти.

23. Translate into English using the words and expressions from the text (Ex. 23)

1. Якби люди були постійно зайняті, захоплення покупками не було б таким масштабним. 2. Багато людей ходять по магазинах знічев'я, просто заради розваги. 2. Рекламні оголошення в газетах та не телебаченні, рекламні постери, гламурні журнали і просто традиції – ось причини того, що люди роблять так багато покупок. 3. Люди стали багатшими, отже мають більше грошей, які можна витратити на покупки. 4. Магазины сьогодні пропонують знижки, розпродажі за дуже низькими цінами та інші пропозиції, перед якими неможливо встояти. 5. Завдяки спеціальній тактиці менеджерів та продавців люди сьогодні часто купують речі, яких насправді не потребують.

Speaking

24. Discussion points.

1. What is preferable for you – to buy food in a big supermarket or in small shops? Why?

2. Where are the best shops for food in your city or town?

3. Speak about foodstuffs sold in your shops:

- say whether they are shipped in or grown locally;

- say which are expensive and inexpensive;

- say what foodstuffs which you might have seen in the shops abroad are not sold in this country.

4. Advertising provides useful information.

5. Do you pay attention to the brand name when you buy food? If not, how do you make your choice?

6. What is your personal style of shopping for food? Do you buy at once or do you take your time to look around for lower prices?

7. How often do you buy very expensive foodstuffs? What kind of products are those? When does it happen?

8. How safe to your mind is to shop online? Do you worry about credit card fraud (шахрайство)?

9. People often buy things they don't want because they are bargains.

10. Young people do not always buy wisely.

25*. *Describe the best-known department store in your city. (The following tips may help you)*

- What does it sell?
- Do you like it?
- What do you (dis)like about its service/quality/prices/bargains?
- What attracts you and what annoys you in this department store?
- What would you personally never buy in a department store? Why?

b) List the factors below in order of importance.

friendly service	low prices
the quality of goods	the design of the shop interior
the size of the shop	brand name goods on sale
shops that aren't crowded	nearby entertainment/café
well-trained shop-assistants	good transportation
possibility to buy on credit	variety of bargains
regular seasonal sales	savings and discount cards

26.* *Highlight the meanings of the proverbs, making up short situations. Tell them in class.*

A bargain is something you don't need at a price you can't resist.

Honey is sweet but the bee stings.

A moneyless man goes fast through the market.

The difference between men and boys is in the price of toys.

It is sweet to drink but bitter to pay for.

It is hard to pay for bread that has been eaten.

Waste not, want not.

A heavy purse makes a light heart.

If you buy quality, you only cry once.

If you buy cheaply, you pay dearly.

27*. Translate the following quotations into Ukrainian and comment upon them.

Necessity never made a good bargain. (*Benjamin Franklin*)

England is a nation of shopkeepers. (*Napoleon I*)

I always say shopping is cheaper than a psychiatrist. (*Tammy Faye Bakker*)

There's times when I just have to quit thinking . . . and the only way I can quit thinking is by shopping. (*Tammy Faye Bakker*)

Many a man thinks he is buying pleasure, when he is really selling himself to it. (*Benjamin Franklin*)

Through want of enterprise and faith men are where they are, buying and selling and spending their lives like servants. (*Henry David Thoreau*)

A person buying ordinary products in a supermarket is in touch with his deepest emotions. (*John Kenneth Galbraith*)

Do not buy what you want, but what you need; what you do not need is dear at a farthing. (*Cato the Elder*)

The customer is always right. (*H. Gordon Selfridge*)

Advertising may be described as the science of arresting the human intelligence long enough to get money from it. (*Stephen Butler Leacock*)

Writing

28. a) Study the following information. Then fill in the chart with the average cost of these products and services in Ukraine.

How much do things cost?

(Below is a rough estimate of how much things cost in England)

Great Britain		Ukraine
Item	Cost (pounds £)	Cost (UAH)
Carrots	(1Kg) £0.71	
Bananas	(1Kg) £0.93	
Sausages	(1Kg) £3.24	
Beef Mince ¹	(400g) £2.38	
Chicken	(Approx 1.75Kg) £4.00	
Milk	(568ml/1pint) £0.40	
Eggs	(carton of 6) £1.45	
Sugar	(1Kg) £0.79	

¹ яловичий фарш

Butter Spread	(250g) £1.22	
Fresh Apple Juice	(1 litre) £1.85	
Bread	(800g loaf) £1.37	
Raspberry Jam	(340g) £1.06	
Kit Kat chocolate bar	(48g) £0.48	
Shampoo	(400ml) £3.19	
Toothpaste	(100ml) £0.91	
Sandwiches	£2.50	
Meal in a restaurant	Starters: £4.50; Main: £10.00; Dessert: £4.00	
Meal in a cafe	From 7.00	
McDonalds Meal	£4.50	
Drinks (in a cafe or bar)	per glass: Beer – £2.75 Wine – £3.50; Coffee – £1.30, Coffee Latte – £1.80; Soft drinks – £1.70; Tea – £1.30; Hot Chocolate – £1.80	
Petrol (gasoline)	£1.08 per litre	
Theatre Ticket	£24.00	
Cinema Ticket	£8.50 – adult; £5.50 – under 15	
London Taxi Journey	One mile: Mon - Fri (6am - 8pm) – £4.20 - £6.20; 8pm - 10pm and weekends – £4.60 - £7.40;	
One London Tube Journey	£4.00 each way	
Average annual gas and/or electricity bill now approaching	£1000	
Price of an average house	£230,000 (£398,476 in London)	
Average annual earnings	£23,486	

b) Write a short summary comparing the prices of things of everyday use in Great Britain and Ukraine (take into account the average annual earnings).*

29. Translate into English.

1. Купувати продукти в супермаркеті дуже зручно: всі покупки можна зробити одночасно в одному місці. 2. Супермаркети обладнують так, щоби покупці щоразу проходили повз велику кількість полиць і бачили широкий асортимент товарів. 3. В супермаркетах Великобританії ціни на товари написані дуже чітко і, як правило, в кінці стоїть число 99. 4. Поряд із нашим будинком є всі магазини: молочний, м'ясний, хлібний, а також мінімаркет, де продають свіжі овочі та фрукти. 5. Я ніколи не складаю список покупок, коли збираюся до магазину, проте я завжди планую, в які магазини зайду. 6. Коли ми з подругою ідемо в супермаркет, я завжди беру кошик, а вона – візок. Я зазвичай купую лише те, що мені потрібно, а вона бере все, що гарно запаковане. 7. Натуральні продукти, звісно, набагато кращі за консервовані та заморожені, проте вони можуть коштувати дорожче. 8. Краще не купувати продукти за зниженими цінами, бо термін їх зберігання може бути прострочений. 9. Мій сусід живе один, тому ніколи не купує багато продуктів; найчастіше він бере пів-хлібини, пляшку молока, пакет сметани, десяток яєць, пару кілограмів картоплі, одну-дві банки м'ясних або рибних консервів. 10. Коли є гроші, я купую щось смачненьке – шматок лососини, селямі, банку ікри, шматок шинки, банку оливок, коробку шоколадних цукерок, – і влаштовую свято. 11. Я дуже не люблю стояти в черзі, тому намагаюся не набирати більше ніж п'ять товарів одразу, щоби пройти через експрес-касу. 12. Стоячи в черзі до каси, я раптом згадав, що забув узяти молоко, тож довелося йти назад до прилавка з молочними продуктами. 13. Ніяк не можу привчити себе купувати подарунки заздалегідь, тому щоразу витрачаю купу часу, стоячи в чергах з такими ж "покупцями в останню мить", як і я. 14. Черга просувалася досить повільно, тому що перед новорічними святами у всіх були повні візки покупок. 15. Я вважаю, що немає сенсу витрачати зайві гроші на фірмові речі, оскільки вироби багатьох "нерозкручених" (not well-publicized) фірм бувають значно дешевші і не гіршої якості.

30*. *Write a short essay on one of the following topics.*

1. Buying Delicacies Gives the Greatest Pleasure When One Hasn't Got Enough Money.
2. Shopping for Food — a Boring Routine or a Revealing Experience?
3. Why I Always Buy Food in the Same Place.
4. The Main Principles I Observe When I Shop for Food.
5. Why Men and Women Have Different Styles of Shopping for Food.

31*. *a) Read the text.*

How to Shop

In America, just as in England, you see the same shops with the same boards and windows in every town and village.

Shopping, however, happens to be an art of its own and you have to learn slowly where to buy various things. If you are hungry, you go to the chemist's. A chemist's shop is called a drug-store in the United States, it is a national institution and a very good institution at that. In the larger drug-stores you are likely to get drugs, too, but their main business consists of selling stationery, candy, toys, braces, belts, fountain pens, furniture and imitation jewellery. Every drug-store has a food-counter with high stools in front of it and there they serve various juices, coffee, sundaes, ice-cream, sandwiches, omelettes and other egg dishes.

If you want cigarettes, you are expected to go to the grocer; if you want to have your shoes cleaned, go to the barber; if you want a radio, go to a man's shop; if you want a suitcase, go to the chemist's. On the other hand, if you want to send a telegram, avoid the post-office, because telegrams are sure to be handled by private companies. Nor has the post-office anything to do with the telephone either, as telephone service is supplied by the American Telephone and Telegraph Co. Nor will you find public conveniences in America in the British sense of the word because a lavatory turned out to be a strictly private enterprise in the United States, well hidden from the public eye.

Whatever you buy, it may be exchanged later for something in the same shop. This seems to be a great pastime with the Americans. A great many people do not really buy things – they only want them to be

exchanged later for something else. It is not unusual at all to see a lady bringing back a hat with a lot of fruit on it and exchanging it either for real fruit or a real hat, or to see somebody bringing back a refrigerator with the remark that he made a mistake and now he wants to subscribe to the Reader's Digest instead.

(by G. Mikes)

b) Translate the text into Ukrainian in writing;

c) Compare the shopping habits of Great Britain and the USA (as they are described by the author) with those of Ukraine. Speak about:

- the main rule of the art of shopping in England/America and in Ukraine;
- drug-stores' (the chemist's) business in England/America and in Ukraine;
- sending telegrams and making phone calls in America and in Ukraine;
- rules of exchanging goods in American and Ukrainian stores.

d) Make up 7-10 sentences describing the shopping habits in Ukraine if compared with those in England and America.

32. a) Learn the idioms from the chart below.

Idiom	Explanation	Example
to shop around	to visit a number of shops selling similar articles in order to compare the prices	You can usually save money by shopping around.
to shop till you drop	to go shopping for a very long time, until you're exhausted	If you go to London with Julie you'll shop till you drop, so take comfortable shoes!
a shopping spree	a lively outing, usually with much spending of money	Julie enjoys going on a shopping spree during the sales.
shopping therapy	this term refers to the idea that buying things can make you feel better	She was very upset so I took her into town for some shopping therapy.

to talk shop	to talk about your work or business in a social situation with someone you work with, and make the conversation boring for the others present	I never go out with my colleagues because we inevitably end up talking shop.
to buy a lemon	to buy something that proves to be worthless	That car he bought is a real lemon.
to buy a pig in a poke	to buy a thing without knowing its real properties and value	She bought this TV set without checking if it operates well. It's a real pig in a poke.
to shop lift	to steal goods from a shop	He was caught shop lifting.
to be on (somebody)	to offer to pay for something (usually food or drink)	He was celebrating his birthday, so the drinks were on him.
to pay one's way	to contribute one's share of the expenses	He's a good friend, he always pays his way.
to pay over the odds/to pay through the nose ¹	to pay too much for something	She definitely paid over the odds for that dress. He ended up paying through the nose for that car.
at all costs	regardless of cost or sacrifice involved	I must have this trendy bag at all costs!
to jack up (the price)	to increase (the prices, salaries, etc.)	They intend to jack up the prices again.

¹ the phrase "To pay through the nose" comes from Danes in Ireland, who cut the noses of those who were careless in paying the Danish poll tax.

to cost a pretty penny	to be too expensive	This dress looks so simple but it costs a pretty penny.
to go for a song	to sell extremely cheaply	The house is going for a song because they need to sell it fast.
to be selling like hot cakes	to be selling very well and quickly	– These sandals are selling like hot cakes! – No wonder, they are all the rage ¹ this season.

b) Translate the following sentences into English using the idioms listed in Ex.

1. – Моя дружина заплатила за цю вечірню сукню купу грошей. – І не дивно! Це ж дизайнерська річ. 2. – Чому вони так підняли ціни на сир та вершкове масло? – Взимку молочні продукти завжди дорожчі. 3. – Навіщо ти накупив аж двадцять пачок перцю? – Бо він продавався майже задурно. 4. – Вчора купив новий блендер у дистриб'ютора на вулиці, а він не працює. – Купувати такі речі у вуличних торгівців – це купувати kota в мішку. 5. – Ці шовкові шарфики просто змітають з прилавків! – Так, вони цієї весни – останній писк моди. 6. Вчора ми з друзями влаштували собі розважальну вилазку по магазинах. Купу грошей розтринькали... 7. – Моя подруга дуже засмучена. Її покинув хлопець. – Піди з нею по магазинах. Гадаю, це буде їй гарним лікуванням від депресії. 8. Моя сестра одразу купує речі в першому-ліпшому магазині, а я люблю походити, подивитися і майже завжди знаходжу те саме значно дешевше. 9. Влаштуємо Петрові вечірку-сюрприз на день народження? – Згода! Тоді Марія готує бутерброди і салати, я куплю напої, а торт і цукерки – за тобою. 10. Той светр, що він купив на розпродажі, зовсім нічого не вартий: не підходить йому ні за розміром, ні за кольором. 11. Я мушу придбати цю старовинну канапу за всяку ціну! Я вже

¹ останній писк моди

півроку "полюю" на неї. 12. Я не люблю ходити в гості до Теда Брауна. Його дружина цілий вечір не відходить від телевізора, а сам Тед справжній зануда – постійно торочить про свою роботу. 13. На вихідні ми їдемо на пікнік, тому я вніс свою частку грошей на продукти і все необхідне. 14. Цього хлопця вже вдруге ловлять на крадіжці в супермаркеті. 15. Подарунок моїй дружині на день народження обійшовся мені в кругленьку суму.

Speaking

33. a) *Look through the Information File below.*

Advertising

Advertising is a form of selling. Advertising seeks to make people aware of things they need and to make them want these things. It tells what products or services are on the market, and how they can be obtained.

It describes new products and announces new uses and improved features of familiar ones.

Advertising suggests that we might enjoy more nourishing foods, more attractive clothes, and more comfortable homes. In doing all these things, advertising helps us to improve our way of living. It also shapes our tastes, habits and customs.

Advertising messages are carried to large audiences by newspapers, magazines, television, radio, and other means of mass communication.

b) What other ways to carry advertising messages do you know? Which of them, to your mind, are the most successful?

37. a) *What are "designer goods"? Which famous names can you think of for these products (clothes and sportswear accessories (bags, shoes, etc.); cars and motorbikes; perfume and cosmetics)?*

b) Read and translate the sentences. Which statements do you agree with? Compare answers.

1. A lot of people in my country want to own these designer goods. 2. Most people in my country can't afford designer labels. 3. Sometimes I save up for something really special. 4. People only want these products because of all the advertising. 5. Products with a

famous name are better quality and last longer. 6. Products like this are a waste of money - you just pay for the label. Cheaper things are often just as good. 7. All trainers and jeans are cool, and look good. 8. People look better in designer clothes than in cheaper ones. 9. It worries me that people spend so much money on these things, and that they care so much about possessions. 10. People who are obsessed with designer clothes are stupid.

38. a) *Read and translate the text. Consult the dictionary if necessary.*

No matter how much or how little money you have to spend, never buy any new clothes before going through your existing wardrobe to see whether you need them or not. But your wardrobe ought to contain certain essentials, and if it does not, you must plan your whole dress budget to include them.

Nearly everyone has to economise these days in order to include in her wardrobe at least some cheaper suits or dresses. When you buy your clothes, go in for simple, well-cut suits or dresses that will look "right" for almost any occasion. Concentrate on styles that are not expensive but elegant and remember that the keynote of all good dress-making is simplicity. Don't be led astray by frills, elaborations and passing crazes unless you have an income suited to them.

With colour you can be as daring as you like nowadays; colour combinations are also very much in favour now; but remember that a blue-eyed blonde would look uninteresting in pale blue because her eyes will be lost in the expanse of blue of her dress. Yellow, cardinal red and even black or white would suit her best. Blue is best on a dark-haired girl – especially royal blue.

If you need advice when you are buying clothes, rely on the sales-man/woman, who is an expert, and then choose whatever appeals to you.

Remember that clothes in which you feel happy are always the most successful clothes. Enemy Number One both to chic and charm is untidiness. You can get away with a dress that is neither new nor expensive (if it is absolutely immaculate) but down-at-heel shoes, grubby-looking gloves, collar or cuffs, a creased skirt completely ruin the effect of a model dress no matter how expensive it may be.

b) Share your opinion on the problems discussed in the text.

34. a) Work in groups. Discuss your shopping habits. Make up a "Survey of People's Shopping Habits" using the answers of your group-mates. Find out:*

- whether they enjoy shopping and why/why not;
- what things they like/hate to shop for the best/worst;
- what kind of stores they like the most, why;
- whether they like window-shopping, shopping around;
- whether they enjoy looking for bargains;
- what they think first about: the price, the quality, the name;
- whether they take advice from shop assistants, friends, family, nobody;
- whether they go shopping alone or with friends;
- whether they spend their money on "things" or on entertainment;
- if they had an unlimited supply of money, how they would spend it;
- if they had less money and had to buy fewer things what they would stop buying;
- whether they buy on sales;
- whether they belong to people who shop till they drop;
- how they prefer to pay – by credit card or cash.

b) Analyse the answers and make a conclusion about your group-mates:

I. You are a Fun Shopper. (You enjoy it. You like to go shopping with your friends and entertain yourselves).

II. You are a Practical Shopper. (You manage to get the best and the cheapest because you consider it worth shopping around and bargain-hunting).

III. You are a Reluctant Shopper. (You dislike doing it! You hate wasting time on shopping. You buy only necessary things at the very first place you see them. You'd prefer online shopping).

35. Hold a debate on your rights when buying goods. Concentrate on what you usually do if the goods you buy are not satisfactory (faulty). Here are some statements to help you in the task:*

1) complaining about faulty goods is never easy; 2) when you buy something from a shop, you're making a contract; 3) the goods should

be fit for their purposes; 4) if the shop sells you faulty goods, it has broken its side of a bargain; 5) if things go wrong, you go back to the shop and cancel the purchase; 6) you can't complain about defects that were pointed out to you, or that you should reasonably have been expected to notice; 7) you are not entitled to compensation if you simply change your mind about wanting the good.

Writing

36. a) *Read the following YAMIO commercial in the Information File:*

Before our family bought YAMIO Breakfast Cereal we were always weak and sick. I was weak and sick. My wife was weak and sick. My mother-in-law was weak and sick. My children were weak and sick too. Now we are strong, healthy and energetic, because WE bought YAMIO Breakfast Cereal! Hurry up and buy some for yourself!

b) *Using the above example, write commercials for these other YAMIO products:*

1) YAMIO Ice-Cream (sad, happy); 2) YAMIO Bread (hungry, full); 3) YAMIO Yoghurt (pale, pink-cheeked); 4) YAMIO Liquid Soap (dirty, clean); 5) YAMIO Instant Coffee (languid, sprightly); 6) YAMIO Toothpaste (teeth – yellow, white); 7) YAMIO paint (house – ugly, beautiful); 8) YAMIO Dog Food (dog – tiny, enormous); 9) YAMIO Furniture (uncomfortable, very comfortable); 10) YAMIO Wax (car – dull, shiny).

(after: English Vocabulary in Use by S. Redman)

37*. a) *Many advertisers seem to believe that by manipulating language they can make any product appeal to consumers. Here is how a very common item might be made to appear desirable by means of advertising. Concentrate on the means the advertisers use to appeal to the buyers.*

F.D.R. jeans! Wonna be cool?
Go to F.D.R. jeans stores, don't be a fool!
With great locations you'll find F.D.R.
So, come by the bus or hop in your car!
Thousands of jeans at prices so low
Get all your buddies and go, go, go!

F.D.R. jeans stores in the Bronx Centre, New Jersey, have the best prices and selection of Lee-ultra-cord jeans.

Look smart in flush new Lee-ultra-cords. The wrinkle free, care free and longer wearing jeans!

While at F.D.R., pick up a free entry point to enter the Lee jeans ultra-cords sports sweepstake that may send you to the 1990 Superball.

F.D.R. jeans stores in Park Chester section of the Bronx across from Missies and on Berger Line Avenue, Union City, New Jersey, Lee-ultra-cord jeans and F.D.R.

GO WITH THE WINNERS! F.D.R. JEANS! GET THEM AND GO!!!

b) Write an advertisement for any of the items listed below. Use as many advertising tricks or persuasive techniques as you can in order to sell your product. Follow the pattern above:

- Colgate toothpaste;
- Camay soap;
- Salamander boots.

38. a) Learn the words denoting containers and quantity listed in the chart.

Containers

barrel – бочка
carton (box) – коробка
basket – кошик
crate – ящик
sack – мішок
tin (US can) – банка
(консервна)
pack – пакет, пачка
jar – банка (скляна,
пластиково тощо)
tube – тубик
tank – канистра
thermos flask – термос

Quantity

bunch – в'язанка, пучок (*e.g.: a bunch of keys, grapes; flowers*)
bundle – 1) в'язанка, пучок (*e.g.: a bundle of sticks, bank-notes*);
2) пакунок, згорток
pile / heap – 1) купа, штабель (*e.g.: a pile of stones, wood, paper*)
roll – згорток, в'язанка, рулон (*e.g.: a roll of paper, cloth*)
loaf – буханець, булка, батон; качан
(*e.g.: a loaf of bread; a loaf of cabbage – качан капусти*)
pair – пара (для парних іменників) (*e.g.: a pair of trousers, shorts, socks, shoes*)
bar – брусок, шматок (*e.g.: a bar of chocolate, a bar of soap*)

b) Match each container with its contents:

1. barrel	a) strawberries
2. sack	b) petrol
3. thermos flask	c) tooth-paste
4. tube	d) castor-sugar
5. box	e) chocolates
6. tank	f) pickles
7. basket	g) smoked sardines in oil
8. jar	h) beer
9. tin (can)	i) soy sauce
10. bottle	j) hot tea, coffee; cold drinks

c) Insert the names of units in which we usually buy the following items:

- 1) a ____ of pants;
- 2) a ____ of bread;
- 3) a ____ of film;
- 4) a ____ of soap;
- 5) a ____ of roses;
- 6) a ____ of beer;
- 7) a ____ of matches;
- 8) a ____ of flour;
- 9) a ____ of shoe-polish;
- 10) a ____ of raspberry jam.

Unit 3.2.

Money and Banking

Vocabulary: words concerning money and banking

Introductory reading

39. Read the text and find out the meaning of the target words (in bold type).

A. Personal Finance

Sometimes in a shop they ask you, "How do you pay?" You can answer: "**Cash**" or "By **cheque (US check)**", or "By **credit card**". Many people **open a bank account** that may help to manage their personal finance. There are two main types of accounts: a **current account** (the one where you **pay in** your salary and then **withdraw** money if you need to pay your everyday bills) and a **savings account** (where you **deposit** any extra money that you have and only **take** your money **out** when you want to **spend it on** something special). A savings account should pay you **interest**. Most banks give you a different **rate of interest** depending on how much you are saving, and how long you have the money on the account. The bank sends you a regular **bank statement** telling you how much money is on your account.

Your bank might give you a **cheque book**, which allows you to write cheques to pay for goods and services. You'll probably also have a bank card which allows you to withdraw cash from an **automatic cash machine/cash dispenser/"hole in the wall" machine (US ATM (automatic teller machine))** and to pay for goods in shops. You get a secret **pin number (personal identification number)** that you use when you withdraw cash.

If you receive a cheque and want to convert it into cash, you can **cash the cheque**. Some companies can also pay money into your account via a **direct bank transfer**. People traditionally use banks for a range of services (**bank officers** and **tellers** will readily tell you all about these services). As well as an **overdraft** facility (withdrawal of money in excess of the credit balance), people also get a mortgage (loan to buy a house), **personal loans**, and **insurance** from their banks. If you have an overdraft, you end up paying a lot of interest (then you are said to be **in the red** as opposed to **in the black/in credit** that means "without **debt**"). Banks now offer telephone banking and

internet banking. This means that you can manage your finances without going to the **local branch/office** of your bank.

While shopping, if you are **in cash**, you usually **pay** for it **outright**, though sometimes you may buy **on credit**. It happens when you are **short of money** or **out of cash**. Certainly you may **borrow money from somebody** (that is somebody may **lend/spare** you money), though now banks offer you a credit card allowing you to withdraw a certain sum of money and to pay it in later. Unfortunately, during the financial or economic crisis, banks stop lending to other banks, then stop lending to their customers, which means a **shortage of credit** and no more cheap credit. In other words, it is a **credit crunch** (when borrowing money (from banks) becomes harder to get and more expensive).

B. Public Finance

The government collects money from citizens through **taxes**: **income tax** (collected on **wages** and **salaries**); **inheritance tax** (collected on what people inherit from others). **VAT (value added tax)** is a tax paid on most goods and services when they are bought. Companies pay **corporation tax** on their profits. **Customs** or **excise duties** have to be paid on goods imported from other countries.

If a person pays too much tax, he/she should be given some money back, a **tax rebate**. The government also sometimes pays out money to people in need, for example, **unemployment benefit** – also known as the **dole** (money received from the state while out of work), **disability allowances** (money the government awards monthly for handicapped people who cannot find work) and **student grants** (to help them pay for studying). The people who receive this money are said to **draw a pension** or to be **on the dole** or **on social security**.

Every country has its own special **currency**. Every day the **rates of exchange** are published in **Currency Exchange** and you can discover, for example, how many hryvnias there are currently to the dollar or to the pound sterling. Cash is in the form of **coins** (pieces of metal usually disc-shaped bearing lettering, designs and numbers showing their values) or paper **bills/banknotes** (notes issued by central or national bank serving as money). Nowadays cheques and credit cards are being used increasingly and may soon replace coins and bills as they are more convenient and safe.

40. Fill in the chart using the information from Ex. 44.

Word(-combination)	Ukrainian Equivalent
cash	
currency	
coin	
paper bill/banknote	
cheque	
to open a bank account	
cheque book	
to cash the cheque	
current account	
savings account	
to withdraw/to take out money	
to pay in/to deposit money	
bank statement	
rate of interest	
automatic cash machine/cash dispenser/ATM	
direct bank transfer	
overdraft	
personal loan	
insurance	
in the red	
in the black/in credit	
local branch	
to spend money (on smth)	
to buy on credit	
to pay outright	
to be out of cash	
to be in cash	
to be short of money	
to lend/to spare smb. money	
to borrow money from smb.	
shortage of credit	
credit crunch	
bank officer	
teller	

tax	
income tax	
inheritance tax	
VAT (value added tax)	
corporation tax	
wages/salaries	
customs duty	
tax rebate	
unemployment benefit	
to be on the dole/on social security	
to draw a pension	
disability allowance	
the rate of exchange	
Currency Exchange	

41. Match the words and their explanations.

1.	income tax	a)	an account where one deposits salary and then withdraws money to pay everyday bills
2.	automatic cash machine	b)	a tax collected on wages and salaries
3.	current account	c)	a piece of metal usually disc-shaped bearing lettering, designs and numbers showing its value
4.	value added tax	d)	a tax that companies pay on their profits
5.	disability allowance	e)	withdrawal of money in excess of the credit balance
6.	inheritance tax	f)	money received from the state while out of work
7	credit crunch	g)	a note issued by central or national bank serving as money
8.	savings account	h)	a tax paid on most goods and services when they are bought

9.	pin number	i)	money the government awards monthly for handicapped people who cannot find work
10.	the dole	j)	the loan students may get to pay for studying
11.	banknote	k)	to be without debt
12.	coin	l)	a situation when borrowing money (from banks) becomes harder to get and more expensive
13.	student grant	m)	a computerized device outside a bank that allows a bank customer to conduct banking transactions
14.	to be in the black	n)	an account that accumulates interest where one deposits any extra money and takes it out to spend on something special
15.	corporation tax	o)	a secret personal identification number used when one operates the ATM
16.	overdraft	p)	a tax collected on what people inherit from others

42. Fill in the chart with the words of similar meaning using the information from Ex. 44.

unemployment benefit	
"hole in the wall" machine	
to take out money	
to spare somebody money	
to deposit	
to be in credit	
banknote	
to be on social security	

43. Give the English equivalents of the following word-combinations.

1) пункт обміну валюти; 2) інвалід; 3) дешевий кредит; 4) кредитний дефіцит; 5) управляти власними фінансами; 6) позика на купівлю житла; 7) виплачувати гроші; 8) знімати готівку з банкомата; 9) обміняти чек на готівку; 10) виплачувати відсоток; 11) шматок металу у формі диска; 12) зручний і безпечний; 13) банківські службовці та касири; 14) податок на додану вартість; 15) ощадний рахунок.

44. Choose the appropriate word:

1. You use your ... to pay in your salaries and then take out the money every time you need to pay your everyday bills.

a) current account; b) savings account; c) credit card.

2. In order to withdraw cash from an ATM you need to insert your ... first.

a) pin number; b) interest; c) the dole.

3. The company pays me my salaries right into my current account via

a) ATM; b) VAT; c) direct bank transfer.

4. My husband had been out of work for almost a year. Though he was paid ..., we were terribly short of money.

a) pension; b) disability allowance; c) unemployment benefit.

5. He ... money from his friend to buy the yacht.

a) lent; b) borrowed; c) spared.

6. Handicapped people receive ... from the state every month.

a) social security; b) the dole; c) disability allowances.

7. I inherited an imposing villa near the sea after my grandma died, but I had to pay ..., which appeared to be a rather large sum of money.

a) corporation tax; b) income tax; c) inheritance tax.

8. I think that cash in the form of ... and ... will be fully replaced by digital or electronic cash in the near future.

a) credit cards/paper bills; b) coins/digital cash; c) coins/paper bills.

9. Due to mobile banking and internet banking services people now can manage their finance without going to ... every time.

a) local branch; b) local ATM; c) local post-office.

10. Last month it happened so that I had an overdraft and ended up paying a lot of

a) *taxes*; b) *customs duties*; c) *interest*.

45. Give the names for the following definitions:

- 1) money in the form of coins and banknotes (c _ _ _);
- 2) extra percentage paid on a loan (i _ _ _ _ _);
- 3) withdrawal of money in excess of the credit balance (o _ _ _ _ _);
- 4) money the bank lends someone (l _ _ _);
- 5) bank account where one pays in his/her salary and then uses it to pay everyday bills (c _ _ _ _ _ account);
- 6) a tax collected on wages and salaries (i _ _ _ _ tax);
- 7) to take money out from an account (w _ _ _ _ _);
- 8) bank account where one deposits extra money and can take it out to spend it on something special (s _ _ _ _ _ account);
- 9) a document telling how much money is left on one's account, usually sent by banks to their customers (bank d _ _ _ _ _);
- 10) a tax that companies pay on their profits (c _ _ _ _ _ tax).

46. Choose the appropriate words:

1. Money is what people use ... things.
a) *to steal*; b) *to eat*; c) *to buy*; d) *to lose*
2. People spend money on ... and services.
a) *goods*; b) *animals*; c) *rain*; d) *hatred*
3. Different countries have their special
a) *dollars*; b) *currencies*; c) *feathers*; d) *overdraft*
4. ... tax is related to one's monthly profit.
a) *inheritance*; b) *added value*; c) *corporation*; d) *income*.
5. You can ... this check at any bank.
a) *cash*; b) *rob*; c) *exchange*; d) *pay in*;

Reading

Pre-Reading Activities

Answer the following questions:

- 1) What does the system of barter mean? 2) What was used instead of money in ancient times? 3) How will the form of money change in the future? Give your reasons. 4) Do you know anything about electronic money? Can you explain what it is? 5) Today many

shops and filling stations, especially those working at night, tend not to accept cash? Why?

47. a) *Read and translate the text:*

The History of Money

Money is anything that is commonly accepted by a group of people for the exchange of goods, services, or resources. Every country has its own system of coins and paper money. Nowadays money has three functions: (1) it's a medium of exchange (we accept coins and currency in return for goods and services); (2) it's a standard of value (we can use it to determine the value of a good or service); (3) it's a store of value (we can save our money and spend it for something we want in the future).

The first people didn't buy goods from other people with money. They used barter. Barter is the exchange of personal possessions of value for other goods that you want. This kind of exchange started at the beginning of mankind and is still used today. From 9,000-6,000 B.C., livestock was often used as a unit of exchange. Later, as agriculture developed, people used crops for barter. Grain, teeth, feathers, skulls, salt, elephant tusks, and tobacco have all been used.

Barter, however, was a very unsatisfactory system because people's precise needs seldom coincided. People needed a more practical system of exchange, and various money systems developed based on goods, which the members of a society recognized as having value. What if you couldn't agree what something was worth in exchange or you didn't want what the other person had? To solve that problem humans developed what is called commodity money. A commodity is a basic item used by almost everyone. In the past, salt, tea, tobacco, cattle and seeds were commodities and therefore were once used as money. At about 1200 B.C. in China, cowry shells became the first medium of exchange, or money; though coins made from pressed tea leaves were also used there. The cowry has served as money throughout history even to the middle of this century. However, using commodities as money had other problems. Carrying bags of salt and other commodities was hard, and commodities were difficult to store or were perishable.

Metal objects were introduced as money around 5000 B.C. China can be thought of as the original development of metal currency. Bronze and copper cowry imitations were manufactured by China at

the end of the Stone Age and could be considered some of the earliest forms of metal coins. In addition, tools made of metal, like knives and spades, were also used in China as money. From these models, we developed today's round coins that we use daily. The Chinese coins were usually made out of base metals (such as copper, lead, zinc, and tin) which had holes in them so that you could put the coins together to make a chain. Countries soon minted their own series of coins with specific values. Metal was used because it was readily available, easy to work with and could be recycled. Since coins were given a certain value, it became easier to compare the cost of items people wanted. Outside of China, the first coins developed out of lumps of silver. Eventually in time they took the appearance of today and were imprinted with numerous gods and emperors to mark their value. These coins were first shown in Lydia (present-day Turkey). Not like Chinese coins, which relied on base metals, these new coins were composed from scarce metals such as bronze, gold, and silver, which had a lot of intrinsic value.

In 118 B.C., banknotes in the form of leather money were used in China. They were one-foot square pieces of white deerskin with colorful borders. This could be considered the first documented type of banknote. This is believed to be the beginning of a kind of paper money. From the 9th century to the 15th century A.D., in China, the first actual paper currency was used as money. Through this period the amount of currency skyrocketed causing severe inflation. European civilization still would not have paper currency for many years. In 1816, England made gold a benchmark of value. This meant that the value of currency was pegged to a certain number of ounces of gold. This would help to prevent inflation of currency. The U.S. went on the gold standard in 1900.

With the introduction of paper currency and non-precious coinage, commodity money evolved into representative money. This meant that what money itself was made of no longer had to be very valuable. Representative money was actually a government or bank's promise to exchange it for a certain amount of silver or gold. For example, the old British Pound Sterling bill was once guaranteed to be redeemable for a pound of sterling silver. For most of the 19th and 20th centuries, the majority of currencies were based on representative money through the use of the gold standard.

Today, currency continues to change and develop. For example, the U.S. has already changed its \$100 and \$20 banknotes. More changes are in the works. Tomorrow is already here. Electronic money (or digital cash) is already being exchanged over the Internet. Digital cash in the form of bits and bytes will most likely become an important new currency of the future.

(based on: Mary Bellis, *About.com. Guide*; www.pbs.org; <http://library.thinkquest.org>.)

b) Learn the following words.

Medium of exchange – засіб обміну; possessions – власність; livestock – худоба; crops – урожай; feather – пір'я; commodity money – товарні гроші (гроші, які представлені якимсь товаром і мають реальну внутрішню вартість; вони є товаром самі по собі, на відміну від паперових грошей); cowry (cowrie) shells – каурі (мушля, яка використовувалася як гроші в деяких частинах Азії та Африки); perishable – той, що псується; spade – лопата; to mint – карбувати (монети); eventually – з часом; scarce metal – рідкісний метал; intrinsic value – внутрішня (дійсна) вартість; skyrocketed – стрімко зростати; benchmark – критерій, мірило; to peg – встановлювати, штучно підтримувати (про ціни, вартість); ounce – унція (міра ваги = 28,3 г); representative money – паперові гроші, повністю забезпечені золотом чи сріблом; redeemable – такий, що повинен бути викуплений.

48. Find in the text the English equivalents for the following Ukrainian words and phrases.

1) біла оленьяча шкіра; 2) "прив'язувати" валюту до золота; 3) знаряддя, виготовлені з металу; 4) неблагородні метали; 5) запобігати інфляції; 6) бронзові та мідні імітації мушлі каурі; 7) монети, виготовлені з пресованого чайного листа; 8) важко зберігати; 9) важлива нова валюта; 10) кількість готівки різко зросла.

49. a) Find in the text sentences with the following expressions and read them aloud. Translate them into Ukrainian and let your classmates translate them back into English without a textbook.

1) was once guaranteed to be redeemable; 2) a society recognized as having value; 3) with numerous gods and emperors; 4) the use of the gold standard; 5) paper currency and non-precious

coinage; 6) in the form of bits and bytes; 7) lumps of silver; 8) like knives and spades; 9) a farmer could ask; 10) a government or bank's promise.

b) Translate the following words and expressions using the text:

засіб обміну	
паперова готівка	
золотий стандарт	
незадовільна система	
більшість валют	
дископодібний	
неблагородний метал	
пресоване чайне листя	
критерій вартості	
дійсна вартість	

Grammar Practice

Grammar Revision: Past Tenses

50. Revise irregular verbs' forms and transform the following sentences as in the models.

Model 1: A: You usually take two pieces of toast, don't you? (three) – B: *Yes, but today I took three.*

Model 2: A: You usually buy your vegetables at your local greengrocer's, don't you? (the market) – B: *Yes, but today I bought them at the market.*

You usually ... don't you? – ...

1) get out at Leicester Square (Piccadilly); 2) meet Paul at his office (at his club); 3) feel well (awful); 4) read the Daily Telegraph (The Times); 5) go with Peter (with Paul); 6) come by bus (by taxi); 7) say too little (too much); 8) buy apples (pears); 9) leave at eight (at nine); 10) put the money in the safe (in the drawer); 11) ring her at seven (at six); 12) wake the children at eight (at seven); 13) spend a lot of money (hardly anything); 14) make a profit (a loss).

51. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense: Past Simple or Past Continuous.

1. Ann works in the supermarket where the big robbery (take) place. – She actually (work) there at the time of the raid? 2. While I

(wonder) whether to buy the dress or not, someone else (come) and (buy) it. 3. He always (borrow) from me, but when I once (ask) him to lend me some money, he (say) he (not have) got it before he even (know) how much I (want) to borrow. 4. My dog (attack) the delivery man as he (take out) my purchases from his van. The man (thrust) a large package into the dog's mouth and of course he (tear) it. Unfortunately the package (contain) my new jacket. I (patch) the jacket up, but it still looks a bit odd. 5. How you (break) your leg? – I (fall) off a ladder at the book-store when I (try) to get the book from the upper shelf. The worst of it (be) that it (be) just before the holidays and I (plan) to go away. – So you (not go) away? – No, of course not. I (cancel) my bookings and (spend) the holiday at home. 6. A few minutes later the bell (ring) again and this time I (find) a man in a peaked cap who (advertise) a new brand of instant coffee. 7. What you (do) before you (get) this job? – I (work) at one of BRUNO supermarkets. – And how long you (stay) with them? – I (stay) for about six months. I (leave) because they always (go) on strike. It (become) quite monotonous.

52. Match the beginnings of sentences in A with their endings in B. Open the brackets.

A.

1. She couldn't afford the shoes because
2. By the time George retired
3. Hilda and Jerry bought a new car
4. Kate needed some advice
5. When Grandma died, nobody knew that

B.

- a) with the money they (*win*) in a competition.
- b) because she (*never/invest*) money before.
- c) she (*spend*) all her money on presents for her family.
- d) she (*save*) thousands of pounds in a box.
- e) he (*earn*) enough money to buy a holiday home.

53. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

1. He (give) me back the book, (thank) me for lending it to him and (say) that he (enjoy) it very much; but I (know) that he (not read) it. 2. I (put) the £5 note into one of my books; but next day it (take) me ages to find it because I (forget) which book I (put) it into. 3. He (park) his car under a No Parking sign and (rush) into the shop. When he (come) out of

the shop ten minutes later the car (be) no longer there. He (wonder) if someone (steal) it or if the police (drive) it away. 4. When I (open) the door I (see) a man on his knees. He clearly (listen) to our conversation and I (wonder) how much he (hear). When I (ask) him what he (do), he (say) that he (drop) a 50 p piece outside the door and (look) for it. I (not see) any sign of the money, but I (find) a small notebook and a pencil which he probably (drop) when the door (open) suddenly. So he (take) notes of our conversation! I (turn) to the stranger and (ask) him for explanations, but he (pull) my hat over my eyes and (run) off down the corridor. By the time I (recover) from the shock he (disappear) round the corner. Curiously enough, when I (move) my foot I (find) that I (stand) on a 50 p piece. Perhaps he (tell) the truth after all!

Speaking

54. a) *Read the Information File and share your opinion as to the items discussed.*

Information File

Stretching Your Budget

One of the most useful things you'll become very good at while studying at the university is how to make a little money go a long way. Students usually have to survive on a pretty tight budget and it's important to get into good habits of economising. Whether your parents are helping you out or you receive a grant, the chances are you'll get your money once a month and then you should manage your finance yourself so that it lasts you a month.

No doubt that food is the first in the list of priorities for the allocation of precious funds. Everyone needs to eat, and failing to set aside enough money for food can be a false economy. Here are a few tips to consider when working out your budget:

1) do a big supermarket shop when your money arrives each month. Buy all your non-perishable foods and other provisions and make sure you buy sufficient to last the whole month. Buy tinned meat and fish and frozen vegetables as well, so that you'll have decent meals even if money is tight towards the end of the month;

2) it's worth learning to cook at least some simple dishes because eating out and getting takeaways generally leads to having an overdraft or borrowing from your friends;

3) allocate an additional, smaller, amount of money for a shop each week. This should be for perishable goods such as bread, milk, fresh fruit and vegetables;

4) plan your meals. This might sound a bit sad but it will save you money, as you won't end up throwing food away. You can also then plan for lots of variety in your diet;

5) when shopping, take full advantage of all those 'buy one, get one free' offers, but don't be tempted to just buy food because it's on special offer: if it's not something you eat often, you'll end up binning it and wasting money.

Once you get into the habit of budgeting you'll find it becomes second nature. It takes a bit of practice and a lot of self-discipline not to dip into funds when there's a big night planned. However, you'll have the last laugh when you're still enjoying good meals at the end of the month. Moreover your self-esteem will rise as you won't have to turn to your parents for help.

(based on: <http://www.ehow.com>)

b) Answer the following questions.

1. Do you receive a monthly grant? / Do your parents support you? 2) Does the money you get last you a whole month? 3) What do you spend most of your money on? Do you agree that food is really the most money-consuming item in one's budget? 4) Do you usually eat out or get takeaways? / Do you eat at home? 5) Can you cook at least simple, not time-consuming dishes? What are they? 6) Do you economise? In what way? 7) Do you agree that borrowing from friends or using a credit card constantly is not a good habit? Why (not)? 8) Do you agree with the saying: you borrow somebody else's money, but you repay your own? Give your reasons.

c) Choose from the tips above those that you consider useful. Motivate your choice.

d) Suggest your own tips that may help any student to economise.*

55. Complete the following statements so they are true for you. Then compare your answers with those of your group-mates. Comment on the most important differences between them.

1. Two of the things I spend most money on are _____ and _____

2. I think too many people waste money on _____

3. If I borrow money from _____, I **usually** / **always** / **seldom** / **never** pay it back.

4. I **sometimes** / **always** / **never** / **usually** forget about money people lend me.

5. I find it **easy** / **difficult** / **impossible** / **pleasant** to save money.

6. The person who earns the most money in my family is

7. The most money I've ever **lost** / **won** / **found** was

8. The person who wastes the most money in my family is

9. I'd like to buy a(n) _____, but I can't afford it.

10. It is (isn't) a good idea to invest money on _____

56. Ask your group-mate in what places he/she can...

1) change money; 2) ask if it is possible to pay by a credit card; 3) ask about the exchange rate; 4) leave a tip; 5) ask for change; 6) ask if service is included; 7) ask the price of something; 8) pay in cash; 9) open a bank account; 10) cash the check.

57. a) Learn the idioms from the chart below.

Idiom	Explanation	Example
to cost an arm and a leg / to cost a pretty penny	to be very expensive	It costs an arm and a leg to buy all these Christmas presents.
to splash out on something	to pay a lot for an important event	They're splashing out on their anniversary this year.
to have money to burn/to be in the money	to have quite a lot of money	I've just received a bonus and I have money to burn!
to be a money bag	to be a rather well-off person	If you marry him, you'll never be short of money. He is a real money bag.
down to chili and beans	very poor; down to one's last penny	Mary and Tom aren't doing too well. They're down to chili and beans.

to be as poor as church mice	to be very poor	His family have always been as poor as church mice.
to be skint	British slang that means having no money	Can you lend me some money until next Friday? I'm skint!
to scrimp and save	to make as many economies as you can to save money	His parents scrimped and saved to send him to university.
a scrooge/a skinflint	Scrooge was a Dickens character, famous for being mean	Why don't you want to buy her a leaving present? You're such a scrooge.
to have more money than sense / to spend money like water / to spend money like there is no tomorrow / to throw money about	to have a lot of money which you waste rather than spend carefully	He just bought another camera – he has more money than sense.
to burn a hole in one's pocket	to not be able to stop spending money	He can't just go out window-shopping. Money burns a hole in his pocket.
pocket / glove / pin money	money saved or earned to be used for incidental expenses	She had scarcely enough pin money to buy in this boutique at least a few times a month.

b) Translate into English using the expressions from the chart above.

1. Моя подруга просто не може втриматися від покупок в день зарплатні. Здається, гроші просто тиснуть їй кишеню. 2. Елісон економить як тільки може, щоби вкластися в бюджет, зате її сестра просто розкидається грішми. Вона ходить у дорогі ресторани і їздить на таксі мало не щодня. Не дивно, що гроші

швидко кінчаються, і вона сидить зовсім без копійки в кінці місяця. 3. Він тринькає гроші, ніби живе останній день... – Так, я помітив, що він частенько при грошах. 4. Його батьки мало не перебиваються з хліба на воду, щоб оплатити його навчання. 5. Коли він вчився в школі, він збирав свої кишенькові гроші, щоби придбати собі новий велосипед. 6. Ніколи не думала, що він такий жаднуга. Він навіть заварює чай з одного пакетика по декілька разів. 7. Цього літа їм довелося розщедритися на святкування річниці їхнього весілля. Це коштувало їм кругленьку суму.

58. Highlight the meanings of the proverbs. Use them in situations of your own.*

Money is the key that opens all doors.

Money doesn't buy happiness.

A fool and his money will soon be parted.

Money gone, friends gone.

A banker is someone who lends you an umbrella when the sun is shining, and who asks for it back when it starts to rain.

The abundance of money ruins youth.

It is easier to get money than to keep it.

Don't offer me advice; give me money.

Lend your money and lose your friend.

Love, pain, and money cannot be kept secret; they soon betray themselves.

With money you are a dragon; with no money, a worm.

Money is the root of all evil.

Money makes the world go around.

59. Translate the following quotations into Ukrainian and comment upon them.*

I inherited my ability from both my parents; my mother's ability for spending money, and my father's ability for not making it. (*Anonymous*)

Money speaks sense in a language all nations understand. (*Aphra Behn*)

Those who have some means think that the most important thing in the world is love. The poor know that it is money. (*Gerald Brenan*)

If women didn't exist, all the money in the world would have no meaning. (*Aristotle*)

A man is usually more careful of his money than he is of his principles. (*Edgar Watson Howe*)

If you do anything just for the money, you don't succeed. (*Barry Hearn*)

Money talks...but all mine ever says is good-bye. (*Anonymous*)

Money can't buy happiness; it can, however, rent it. (*Bumper Sticker*)

Money isn't everything, but it sure keeps the kids in touch. (*Bumper Sticker*)

There are three great friends: an old wife, an old dog, and ready money. (*Benjamin Franklin*)

Nothing is so strongly fortified that it cannot be taken by money. (*Cicero*)

Money often costs too much. (*Ralf Waldo Emerson*)

Grammar Revision: Modal verbs

Mind!

can is used to express ability with **could, be able**; **could** is used for polite requests

must + perfect infinitive is used for affirmative deductions;

can't/couldn't + infinitive is used for negative deductions;

needn't + perfect infinitive is used for a past action which was unnecessary but was performed.

particle **'to'** isn't used with the infinitive after the modal verbs except **ought**, as well as **have, be** in the modal meaning and the equivalents **to be able, to be allowed, to be obliged**.

60. Fill the following spaces, using **can** for present, **could** for past and **shall/will be able** for future.

1 ... you stand on your head? – I ... when I was at school but I ... now. 2. When I've passed my driving test I ... hire a car from our local garage. 3. At the end of the month the Post Office will send him an enormous telephone bill which he ... pay. (*negative*) 4. I ... remember the address, (*negative*) – ... you even remember the street? (*negative*) 5. When the fog lifts we ... see where we are. 6. You've put too much in your rucksack; you never ... carry all that. 7. When I was

a child I ... understand adults, and now that I am an adult I ... understand children, (*negative, negative*) 8. When you have taken your degree you ... put letters after your name? 9. When I first went to Spain I ... read Spanish but I ... speak it. (*2nd verb negative*) 10. I'm locked in. I ... get out! (*negative*) – ... you squeeze between the bars? (*negative*) – No! I ...; I'm too fat. (*negative*).

61. Insert the correct form of **may/might** or **be allowed** form:

1. We ... as well stay here till the weather improves. 2. You ... tell me! (*I think I have a right to know*). 3. Candidates ... bring textbooks into the examination room (*negative*). 4. The police ... (*have a right to*) ask a driver to take a breath test. 5. You ought to buy now; prices ... go up. 6. We'd better be early; there ... be a crowd. 7. You will ... (*have permission to*) use my office. 8. You ought to go to his lectures, you ... learn something. 9. Warning: No part of this book ... be reproduced without the publisher's permission. 10. ... I see your passport, please?

62. Insert **must** or the present, future, or past form of **have to**.

1. He sees very badly; he ... wear glasses all the time. 2. Mr Pitt ... cook his own meals. His wife is away. 3. I hadn't enough money and I ... pay by cheque. 4. Employer: You ... come to work in time. 5. If you go to a dentist with a private practice you ... pay him quite a lot of money. 6. In my district there was no gas laid on. People ... use electricity for everything. 7. *Notice above petrol pump*: All engines ... be switched off. 8. The shops here don't deliver. We ... carry everything home ourselves. 9. The buses were all full; I ... get a taxi. 10. When I changed my job I ... move to another flat.

63. Fill the spaces in **must not** or **need not**:

1. You ... ring the bell; I have a key. 2. You ... drink this: it is poison. 3. We ... drive fast; we have plenty of time. 4. We ... make any noise or we'll wake the baby. 5. Mother to child: You ... tell lies. 6. You ... turn on the light; I can see quite well. 7. You ... strike a match; the room is full of gas. 8. You ... carry that parcel home yourself; the shop will send it. 9. You ... smoke in a non-smoking compartment. 10. If you want the time, pick up the receiver and dial 8081; you ... say anything.

64. Put to where necessary before the infinitives in brackets.

1. I'll have (hurry). 2. You ought (take) a holiday. 3. You are (go) at once. 4. You can (see) the windmill from here. 5. He was able (explain). 6. You needn't (look) for a hotel; I'll be able (put) you up. 7. The doctor said that I ought (give up) smoking. 8. May I (ask) you a question? 9. You must (look) both ways before crossing the road. 10. It might (kill) somebody.

65. Fill the spaces in the following sentences by using **must**, **can't** and **needn't** + the perfect infinitive of the verbs in brackets.

1. Did you hear me come in last night? – No, I ... (be) asleep. 2. I wonder who broke the wineglass; it ... (be) the cat for she was out all day. 3. You ... (help) him. (*You helped him but he didn't need help.*) 4. I had my umbrella when I came out but I haven't got it now. – You ... (leave) it on the bus. 5. He ... (escape) by this window because it is barred. 6. I bought two bottles of milk. – You ... (buy) milk; we have heaps in the house. 7. Perhaps he swam across. – No, he ... (do) that; he can't swim. 8. Do you remember reading about it in the newspapers? – No, I ... (be) abroad at the time. 9. He ... (walk) from here to London in two hours. It isn't possible. 10. You ... (lend) him your map. He has one of his own.

66. Fill each of the following gaps with a suitable modal verb or its equivalent.

1. I left my book at home.... I share yours? 2. I'm taking swimming lessons. I hope to ... to swim by the end of the month. 3. I'm sorry I'm late. I ... to wait ages for a bus. 4. Teacher: You ... (*obligation*) read the play, but you ... (*no obligation*) read the preface. 5. You're getting fat. You ... to cut down on your beer drinking. 6. I've come without any money. ... you possibly lend me \$5? 7. You've spelt it wrong. There ... be another 's'. 8. We ... to take a taxi. Otherwise we'll be late. 9. I've lost my umbrella! I ... left it on the bus! (*deduction*) 10. You ... (*negative*) to be driving so fast. There's a speed limit here.

Reading

Pre-Reading Activities

Answer the following questions:

1) Can you name anyone known as one of the richest persons in the world? 2) Are there any people in Ukraine belonging to the list of the richest people in the world? 3) Does the financial and economic crisis affect the rich/the well-to-do/the poor people? In what way? Give your reasons.

67. a) *Read and translate the following text:*

Who are the richest people in the world?

It can be very difficult to establish exactly who the richest people in the world are because every "top ten richest people" list is slightly different. This is partly because many extremely prosperous people keep the details of their finances to themselves and partly because it depends exactly how their wealth is calculated in real terms. However the names, which are common to various "top ten" lists are these: Bill Gates, Warren Buffet, Prince Al-Waleed bin Talal bin Abdul Aziz Al Saud, the Walton family in America, and some more famous names.

How did these people get to be so rich? These "top ten" have become billionaires in a variety of ways. *Bill Gates*, a Harvard University drop-out, is a self-made man who set up the Microsoft Company and revolutionized computer software. The company's co-founder, *Paul Allen*, also ranks highly in "rich lists" despite leaving the company in the mid-1980s.

Warren Buffet is another self-made man who vies with Gates in the "rich lists" at least – in real life they get on well, apparently. Buffet made his money through the holding company Berkshire Hathaway and a series of wise investments.

Prince Al-Waleed Bin Talal Al Saud, from Riyadh in Saudi Arabia, has made his billions through investments, not oil, as one might have presumed.

The next name which crops up on many a "rich list" is that of *Albrecht*. The Albrecht brothers, Karl and Theo, made their money through the "Aldi" chain of supermarkets, which originated in Germany.

No 'rich list' would be complete without the Walton family. *Sam Walton* set up shop in 1962 in Arkansas in America. If he were alive today (he died in 1992) it is estimated that he would be worth twice what Bill Gates is worth today. His children inherited his wealth and

are all fabulously rich though not all of them play an active part in the running of the family business: Wal-Mart¹.

As demonstrated by the Albrecht brothers and the Walton family, the retail business in general seems to be a good way to make money. Another billionaire in retail is *Ingvar Kamprad* (IKEA). The beauty industry is highly profitable too, as demonstrated by *Liliane Bettencourt* (L'Oreal). The richest man in Britain is the *Duke of Westminster*², who inherited his wealth – his family owns large swathes of Mayfair and Belgravia in the West End of London.

One may wonder if the credit crunch has affected the super-rich? The short answer is "yes". Apparently even the mega-rich are not immune to fluctuations in the world of finance. Where there were over 1,100 billionaires in the world a year ago there are now fewer than 800. However, billionaires can ease the situation by living in countries where they pay less tax. For this reason Britain has more than its fair share of billionaires. Although only 35 of the world's billionaires are British several non-British billionaires choose to live in the UK due to the tolerant tax policy towards non-residents. For this reason Britain hosts Stelios Haji-Ioannou³ (Easy-Jet) and Roman Abramovich (oil magnate), despite the fact that they are Greek and Russian, respectively.

(based on: www.englishclub.com)

b) Learn the following words.

Slightly – несуттєво; prosperous – багатий, заможний, успішний; a drop-out – (розм.) людина, що покинула роботу або навчання; to vie [ˈvai] – конкурувати, змагатися; apparently – без сумніву, очевидно; set up shop – заснувати підприємство, розпочати власну справу; run the family business – керувати сімейним бізнесом; swath [ˈswɑːθ] –

¹ **Wal-Mart Stores, Inc.** (branded as *Walmart*) is an American public corporation that runs a chain of large, discount department stores. It is the world's largest public corporation by revenue.

² The title *Duke of Westminster* was created by Queen Victoria in 1874 and bestowed upon Hugh Grosvenor, the 3rd Marquess of Westminster. The current holder of the title is Gerald Grosvenor, 6th Duke of Westminster. Large real estate holdings in central London make him one of Britain's richest men.

³ a Greek born British entrepreneur best known for setting up *EasyJet*, a low-cost airline.

нерухомість, землі; immune – несприйнятливий, невразливий, захищений; fluctuation – коливання, нестабільність.

c) Fill in the blanks with the words from the text. Then take the first letter of each of them and rearrange them to find the hidden word connected with this talking point.

1. It can be very difficult to _____ exactly who the richest people in the world are because every "top ten richest people" list is slightly different. 2. Warren Buffet is _____ self-made man who vies with Gates in the "rich lists" at least. 3. Prince Alwaleed Bin Talal Alsaud, from Riyadh in Saudi Arabia, has made his billions through investments, not _____, as one might have presumed. 4. The beauty industry is highly profitable too, as _____ by Liliane Bettencourt (L'Oreal). 5. The richest man in Britain is the _____ of Westminster, who inherited his wealth – his family owns large swathes of Mayfair and Belgravia in the West End of London. 6. Although only 35 of the world's billionaires are British several non-British billionaires choose to live in the UK due to the _____ tax policy towards non-residents.

68. Find in the text the English equivalents for the following Ukrainian words and phrases.

1) казково багатий; 2) мудре капіталовкладення; 3) поблажлива податкова політика; 4) незважаючи на той факт, що...; 5) підприємство роздрібної торгівлі; 6) людина, яка добилася успіху в житті самостійно; 7) успадкувати багатство; 8) програмне забезпечення для комп'ютерів; 9) обмеження кредитів; 10) в реальному обчисленні.

69. Read and translate the following expressions consulting the dictionary. Which expression would you use about yourself, your friends or relatives at the moment?

He's a multi-millionaire. She inherited millions (an oil-heiress). They won a fortune. She's got more money than sense. They're made of money. He's a very wealthy businessman. She's extremely well-off. You're looking very prosperous. They say we're living in an affluent society. Money doesn't buy happiness, but it helps. I'm a bit hard up at the moment, actually. I'm down to my last ten pence. He's broke. They're on the breadline. I haven't got a penny to my name. I'm afraid

we're bankrupt, gentlemen. Now I know what it's like to be poverty-stricken. I'm running into debt. I owe money everywhere. I'm heavily in debt. I'm a few thousand in the red. I'm up to my ears in debt.

Speaking

70*. a) *Read the Information File.*

How to Make Money Fast

Need a little extra cash in a hurry? Students often need extra money, don't they? Follow these steps and you're bound to have a fuller pocket by the end of the week. It may not be much, and it may not be reliable, but your options are limited if you're short on time.

1. *Complete Online Surveys.* Companies who want to know what's on the minds of their customers are willing to pay for your opinion. Online surveys won't make you rich, and won't allow you to quit your day job, but you can make a little extra cash.

2. *Consider day labour.* There are employment agencies that specialize in this type of arrangement, and you can get paid at the end of the workday. The jobs you find through an agency are usually in construction, factories, offices, and manufacturing. You can also check your local newspaper or internet classifieds to find quick labour gigs, like painting, mowing, or moving work. Keep in mind that less formal arrangements could result in you not getting paid or worse, you getting injured without any kind of compensation!

3. *Become a street performer.* If you can dance, play music, or tell jokes, you can probably get some cash by performing in public. But don't do this unless you are actually good at it. Put together a good act and find a place to perform. Give people a dose of live entertainment, and hopefully they'll reward you with tips.

4. *"Donate" blood.* If you are in good health you can donate blood. Many college students do this to make extra cash. Moreover, it really is a good deed as your blood may help to save somebody's life some day.

5. *Recycle.* Scrap metals are also worth something, so if you've got a big pile of scrap in your backyard, you can pick it up in your truck and get it to any recycler in your neighbourhood (you can call to several recyclers before to compare prices). You'll have some extra money and... get a clean backyard afterwards.

6. *Become a moving advertisement.* Creative marketing companies might be willing to pay you to get their name out there. You can try wearing t-shirts, clothes, costumes that advertise a business.

Make sure that whatever you're doing does not violate any local laws or regulations.

b) Express your own views on the problem discussed. Consider the following items:

- Say if among the points suggested in the text there are any that you can accept for yourself if you need money?

- Are there among the points suggested any that are completely unacceptable for you? Why?

- Have you ever tried to make money fast using one of the above mentioned ways? What was it?

- Can you suggest any other ways to make money fast? What are they? Give your reasons.

71. a) Read the dialogue below.*

Money and Friends

Paul: I say, Kate, if a friend came to you asking to borrow some money, what would your reaction be?

Kate: If I have a good friend that really needs the money then, of course, if I have the money, I would probably lend it.

Paul: So, in what situation would you lend your friend money?

Kate: Well, for example, it's a person that is really trying his best to have money and he is in a situation that is an emergency and needs the money then I would lend it. What about you Paul?

Paul: Yeah, I would lend... I would be a little bit nervous to lend a close friend money because I think that money can sometimes affect a friendship.

Kate: I guess that's true. Do you have a bad experience with it?

Paul: Actually, I do. Yeah. I've had a bad experience of a very close friend of mine, he was asking for money from me and at first just once and then twice and then he started asking for more money and when I refused it actually had a big effect on our friendship.

Kate: Are you still friends?

Paul: Oh, we're not. We're not friends anymore, but he did buy his car.

Kate: Oh, wow! This was for a car.

Paul: Yeah, he kind of cheated me out of a lot of money, so he was working as well and he was trying to save some money and in the end he bought his car but he lost his friend.

Kate: Yeah, I guess that's very difficult to say, but what about... would you ask for money if you need it?

Paul: Personally, I think before I asked a friend for money I would prefer to either ask my parents or my sister. How about you if you were in that situation?

Kate: Well, if I had no choice, and not asked my family, I could ask my friend. Of course, he has to be a very good friend.

(from: <http://www.ello.com>.)

b) Hold a debate on: "Friendship and Money". Work in small groups.

1. Discuss the moral aspect of borrowing/lending money (if you lend money to a close friend, do you expect him/her to repay your money? If you borrow money from your friends, do you always pay that money back?).

2. Speak on your personal experience of having "money affairs" with your close friends, if any.

3. Discuss the influence of money borrowing/lending on friendship (it breaks the friendship/it doesn't affect the friendship/it makes the friendship even stronger); motivate your point.

Writing

72. Write an essay (200-250 words) on the following subjects:

1. What do I waste my money on ...
2. Am I good at saving money?
3. Is it a good idea to distribute the wealth of the world evenly among all the people?
4. Friendship and Money.
5. Money and Investments: Where would I invest my money?

Extended reading

(1) Shopping Innovations

The Mall. A shopping center, shopping mall, or shopping plaza, is the modern adaptation of the historical marketplace. The mall is a collection of independent retail stores, services, and a parking area, which is conceived, constructed, and maintained by a separate management firm as a unit. They may also contain restaurants, banks, theaters, professional offices, service stations etc.

The first shopping mall was the Country Club Plaza, founded by the *J.C. Nichols Company* and opened near Kansas City, Mo., in 1922. The first enclosed mall called *Southdale* opened in Edina, Minnesota (near

Minneapolis) in 1956. In the 1980s, giant megamalls were developed. The West Edmonton Mall in Alberta, Canada, opened in 1981 – with more than 800 stores and a hotel, amusement park, miniature-golf course, church, "water park" for sunbathing and surfing, a zoo and a 438-foot-long lake.

Shopping Carts. Sylvan Goldman invented the first shopping cart in 1936. Sylvan owned a chain of Oklahoma City grocery stores called *Standard/Piggly-Wiggly*. He invented the first shopping cart by adding two wire basket and wheels to a folding chair. Goldman, together with mechanic Fred Young, later designed a dedicated shopping cart in 1947 and formed the *Folding Carrier Co.* to manufacture the carts.

In 1946, Orla Watson, of Kansas City, MO, invented the *telescoping shopping cart*. By using hinged baskets, each shopping cart fitted into the shopping cart ahead for compact storage. The telescoping shopping carts were first used at *Floyd Day's Super Market* in 1947.

Smart Cart. Silicon Valley¹ inventor George Cokely – the same guy behind the Pet Rock² – has come up with a modern solution to one of the supermarket industry's oldest problems: stolen shopping carts. It's called *Stop Z-Cart*. The wheel of the shopping cart holds the device which contains a chip and some electronics, when the cart is rolled over a certain distance away from the store, the shopping cart owners know about it.

¹ **Silicon Valley** is the southern part of the San Francisco Bay Area in Northern California, USA. The term originally referred to the region's large number of silicon chip innovators and manufacturers, but eventually came to refer to all the high-tech businesses in the area

² **Pet Rocks** were invented in 1970s in Los Gatos, California, by advertising executive Gary Dahl. His idea was to sell a pet that would not need to be fed, walked, bathed, etc. and would not die, become sick, or be disobedient. The first Pet Rocks were ordinary gray stones bought at a builder's supply store and marketed as if they were live pets. The stones were swaddled in packing material (usually hay or straw for the rock's "comfort") and nestled in a small cardboard box (with air holes to "breathe"), similar to a pet carrier. An¹ official training manual called *The care and training of your Pet Rock* was included, with instructions on how to properly raise and care for one's new found pet rock. This was said to be the secret to Dahl's Pet Rock success. The instruction manual contained several commands that could be taught to the new pet. While "sit" and "stay" were effortless to accomplish, "roll over" usually required a little extra help from the trainer/owner. "Come", "Stand", and "Shake hands" were found to be near-impossible to teach, but "attack" was fairly simple (also with some additional help from the owner).

Shopping Cart Bumpers with Advertising. Harold Evans patented a shopping cart bumper system, a foam wrap-around unit that protects while providing valuable advertising space.

Automatic Doors. Horton Automatics developed and sold the first automatic sliding door in America in 1960. The company co-founders Dee Horton and Lew Hewitt invented the sliding automatic door in 1954. Their automatic doors used a mat actuator. "The idea came to Lew Hewitt and Dee Horton to build an automatic sliding door back in the mid-1950's, when they saw that existing swing doors had difficulty operating in Corpus Christi's winds¹. So the two men went to work inventing an automatic sliding door that would circumvent the problem of high winds and their damaging effect. *Horton Automatics Inc.* was formed in 1960, placing the first commercial automatic sliding door on the market and literally establishing a brand-new industry."

Coupons. A Philadelphia pharmacist named Asa Candler invented the coupon in 1895. Candler bought the *Coca-Cola Company* from the original inventor Dr. John Pemberton, an Atlanta pharmacist. Candler placed coupons in newspaper for a free Coke from any fountain – to help promote the new soft drink.

Bar Codes. The first patent for bar code was issued to inventors Joseph Woodland and Bernard Silver on October 7, 1952.

Cash Register. It was 1878 in Dayton, Ohio. Saloon owner James Ritty suspected that members of his staff were stealing from his business by taking customer cash and pocketing it. Unfortunately, Ritty had no way of proving that. But in a year with the help of his brother, Ritty invented and patented the first mechanical cash register, named "Ritty's Incorruptible Cashier".

Mail Order Catalogue. Aaron Montgomery Ward sent out his first mail order catalog in 1872 for his Montgomery Ward mail order business located at Clark and Kinzie Streets in Chicago. Aaron Montgomery Ward was born on Feb. 17, 1844 and died on Dec. 7, 1913. He first worked for Marshall Field, a department store, as both a store clerk and a traveling salesman. As a traveling salesman, he realized that his rural customers could be better served by mail-order, a revolutionary idea. He started his business with only \$2,400 in capital. Montgomery Ward was a mail-order only business until 1926, when the first Montgomery Ward retail store opened in Plymouth, Indiana.

The first catalog consisted of a single sheet of paper with a price list, 8 by 12 inches, showing the merchandise for sale with ordering instructions. Ward's gradually expanded the catalogues. They became bigger, more heavily

¹ **Corpus Christie** is a coastal city in the South Texas region of the U.S. state of Texas. It is famous for its highest average wind speeds of coastal cities in North America.

illustrated, chock full of goods – often referred to as "dream books" by rural families.

Department Stores. *Bloomingdale's* was founded in 1872 by brothers Lyman and Joseph Bloomingdale. The store rode the popularity of the hoop skirt (*спідниця з криноліном*) to sales success and practically invented the department store concept at the beginning of the 20th century. *Bloomingdale's* joined the Federated corporate family in 1930."

In 1877, John Wanamaker opened *The Grand Depot*, a six story round department store in Philadelphia. John Wanamaker never claimed to have invented the department store, but he was on the cutting edge of a trend. The retail giants of the day, Marshall Field in Chicago, Alexander T. Steward in New York, were discovering that the vast power of buying wholesale could cut costs to reduce retail prices. John Wanamaker is credited with developing one of the first (if not the first) true department stores in the country, and with creating the first White Sale, modern price tags, and the first in-store restaurant. He also pioneered the use of money-back guarantees and newspaper ads to advertise his retail goods.

In 1868, Mormon leader Brigham Young, founded *Zion's Cooperative Mercantile Institution* (ZMCI) in Salt Lake City, which some historians credit as being the first department store however, most historians give the credit to John Wanamaker. ZCMI first sold clothing, dry goods, drugs, groceries, produce, shoes, trunks, sewing machines, wagons, and machinery. It was thus a department store from the very start and ZCMI claims to be America's first full-fledged department store at birth.

(after Mary Bellis: <http://inventors.about.com>)

(2) Shopping in New York City

Even with all the attractions and events in New York, nothing beats a day of shopping at the fine shops in New York City. It would be a nice pastime to plan a walk down Fifth Avenue to find the finest or check out these links to shop New York from home.

One of the greatest things about shopping in New York City is that there is a store for nearly everything – you just need to know where to go. For foodies visiting New York City, there is a list of recommended stores for finding stellar ingredients and top notch kitchen equipment. Foodies beware: make sure you've got plenty of room in your bags to pack the treasures you buy! Since 1976, home cooks and professionals have been going to *Broadway Panhandler* for its extensive array of kitchen and cooking supplies. The stock is extensive, but they ensure that only the best products are available (and often at really good prices). They hold in-store events and demonstrations covering everything from cheese knives to cherry pies.

If you're looking for an elusive ingredient or spice, look no further than *Kalustyan's*. This Gramercy shop is full of top notch ingredients, from rices

and beans to spices and dried fruits. There is a particular emphasis on Indian and Mideastern ingredients, including great frozen canapés and fresh breads.

Kam Man Food Products is a Chinese market that carries a vast array of Chinese ingredients, cooking tools and dinnerware at great prices. They also have extensive tea offerings and a fun selection of frozen foods. There are a lot of Chinese medicinal ingredients for sale as well – the large apothecary jars with sharks fin and birds nests are worth a look.

If you love cheese, *Murray's Cheese Shop* is a required stop on your New York City route. In addition to a mind-blowing array of cheeses, Murray's has tremendously helpful staff trying to make shopping there a real pleasure. Even if you're far from home, a few pieces of cheese and some bread (available there or next door at *Amy's bread*) can make for a memorable meal.

Russ started selling herring from a pushcart after immigrating to the Lower East Side from Eastern Europe and the business has been run by his family ever since. *Russ & Daughters* is the ideal place to get your fix of Jewish delicacies, from lox and sable to rugalach [ˈrugalak] (pastry made with a cream cheese dough and different fillings (as raisins and walnuts and cinnamon or chocolate and walnut and apricot preserves)) and babka. They also have extensive mail order options if you're looking to have souvenirs or gifts sent home.

While no longer at its original Sullivan Street location, Jim Lahey's outstanding artisan (hand-made according to traditional recipes) breads coming out of Hell's Kitchen are still amazing. You can also find *Sullivan Street Bakery* breads at many of New York City's top restaurants, as well as at several Manhattan high-end grocery stores. For the true bread-aficionado (a great supporter) Jim Lahey also teaches classes about his slow rise, no knead method of bread making.

Located on Manhattan's Upper West Side, *Zabar's* is practically a New York City institution. Downstairs, you'll find yourself entrenched with local New Yorkers as you wind your way through the narrow aisles. It's a great place to pack a picnic to enjoy in Central Park, or to pick up some delicious foods to bring home with you. Upstairs, you'll find an incredibly well stocked kitchenware store with great prices.

(3) Shopping in Great Britain

Europe dictates a fashion to the whole world. Nowadays France is the centre of fashion. But in the last century her place was occupied by the UK. At that time a lot of new modern shops appeared. Now their branches are situated all over the world. The Most famous of them are in London in Oxford Street, Regent Street, and Knightsbridge. Besides book's, clothes', food shops in Great Britain there are a lot of supermarkets and department stores where you can buy everything from a button to a car and furniture. If you come to

Great Britain on a shopping tour, you should visit the most famous British shops.

The *Body shop* offers more than 900 natural beauty products. You can also shop online for natural skin care, make-up, body butter, aromatherapy, hair care, perfumes, soap, shampoo and other beauty products for men and for women. *Dillons* was opened in 1936 as the bookshop to the University of London.

W.H. Smith is a large national chain of shops selling books, newspapers, magazines and stationery, confectionery and tobacco products, supported by videos, DVDs and music. These shops also sell books, videos, stationary, pens and office equipment.

Kensington and Knightsbridge is an exclusive area of London. There you can find the department store that is the symbol of expensive and high-class living – *Harrods*. People say you can buy anything in Harrods, including wild animals – they even have a zoo which will sell you lion cubs as well as more common pets such as dogs, cats or parrots.

Sainsbury's supermarkets are one of the leaders in food and drink selling in Britain. But the most famous of British shops all over the world is *Marks & Spencer*. It attracts a great variety of customers, from housewives to millionaires. Last year it made a profit of 529 million, which is more than 10 million a week. It all started 109 years ago, when a young Polish immigrant, Michael Marks, had a stall in Leeds market. He didn't have many things to sell: some cotton, a little wool, lots of buttons, and few shoelaces. Above his stall he put the notice: "Don't ask how much – it's a penny. Ten years later, he met Tom Spencer and together they started Penny Stalls in many towns in the north of England. Today there are 564 branches of M&S all over the world – in America, Canada, Spain, France, Belgium, and Hungary. In M&S the best selling clothes are: for women – jumpers, bras, and knickers; for men – shirts, socks, pyjamas, dressing gowns, and suits; for children – underwear and socks. Best-sells in food include fresh chickens, bread, vegetables and sandwiches. Why is M&S so successful? The store bases its business on three principles: good value, good quality, and good service.

Most of London's big department stores are in Oxford Street and Regent Street. They are always crowded, but at sale times, in January and July, there are so many people that it is difficult to move and it is usually safer to go in the direction of the majority!

If you are looking for something "different" (but cannot afford the prices of Bond Street) it is certainly worth going to *New Covent Garden*. This used to be England's biggest fruit and vegetable market, but a few years ago, the market was moved to a new site on the other side of the River Thames. The old market, now called "New Covent Garden", was restored and converted into a shopping centre. There are now more than forty shops of

many different kinds, and there are several places to eat and drink. The opening hours are different from most other shops: they open at 10 a.m. and close at 8 p.m. As well as shopping, there is entertainment with lunch-time theatre groups and classical, jazz, folk and pop music.

(based on: *Spotlights on Britain* by S. Sheerin, G. Seath, G. White)

(4) Who Invented...

...Credit Cards?

A credit card is an automatic way of offering credit to a consumer. Credit is a method of selling goods or services without the buyer having cash in hand. Today, every credit card carries an identifying number that speeds shopping transactions.

According to Encyclopedia Britannica, "the use of credit cards originated in the United States during the 1920s, when individual firms, such as oil companies and hotel chains, began issuing them to customers." However, references to credit cards have been made as far back as 1890 in Europe. Early credit cards involved sales directly between the merchant offering the credit and credit card, and that merchant's customer. Around 1938, companies started to accept each other's cards. Today, credit cards allow you to make purchases with countless third parties. Credit cards were not always been made of plastic. There have been credit tokens made from metal coins, metal plates, and celluloid, metal, fiber, paper, and now mostly plastic cards.

The inventor of the first bank issued credit card was **John Biggins** of the Flatbush National Bank of Brooklyn in New York. In 1946, Biggins invented the "Charge-It" program between bank customers and local merchants. Merchants could deposit sales slips into the bank and the bank billed the customer who used the card.

In 1950, the Diners Club issued their credit card in the United States. The Diners Club credit card was invented by Diners' Club founder **Frank McNamara** and it was intended to pay restaurant bills. A customer could eat without cash at any restaurant that would accept Diners' Club credit cards. Diners' Club would pay the restaurant and the credit card holder would repay Diners' Club. The Diners Club card was at first technically a charge card rather than a credit card since the customer had to repay the entire amount when billed by Diners Club.

American Express issued their first credit card in 1958. Bank of America issued the BankAmericard (now Visa) bank credit card later in 1958.

Credit cards were first promoted to traveling salesmen (more common in that era) for use on the road. By the early 1960s, more companies offered credit cards, advertising them as a time-saving device rather than a form of credit. American Express and MasterCard became huge successes overnight.

... Automatic Teller Machines (ATM)

An automatic teller machine or ATM allows a bank customer to conduct their banking transactions from almost every other ATM machine in the world. As is often the case with inventions, many inventors contribute to the history of an invention, as is the case with the ATM.

Luther Simjian (1905-1997) came up with the idea of creating a "hole-in-the-wall machine" that would allow customers to make financial transactions. In 1939, Luther Simjian applied for 20 patents related to his ATM invention and field-tested his ATM machine in what is now Citicorp. After six months, the bank reported that there was little demand for the new invention and discontinued its use.

According to BBC News, the world's first ATM was installed in a branch of Barclays in Enfield, North London. **John Shepherd Barron**, who worked for the printing firm De La Rue was the chief inventor. In a Barclays press release, the bank stated that comedy actor Reg Varney, star of TV sitcom "On the Buses", became the first person in the country to use a cash machine at Barclays Enfield on June 27th, 1967. The ATMs were at that time called DACS for De La Rue Automatic Cash System. John Shepherd Barron was the managing director of De La Rue Instruments, the company which made the first ATM.

At that time plastic ATM cards did not exist. John Shepherd Barron's ATM machine took checks that were impregnated with carbon 14, a slightly radioactive substance. The ATM machine would detect the carbon 14 mark and match it against a pin number. The idea of a personal identification number or PIN was thought up by John Shepherd Barron and refined by his wife Caroline, who changed John's six digit number to four as it was easier to remember.

John Shepherd Barron never patented his ATM invention instead he decided to try to keep his technology a trade secret. He stated that after consulting with Barclay's lawyers, "we were advised that applying for a patent would have involved disclosing the coding system, which in turn would have enabled criminals to work the code out."

Don Wetzel was the co-patentee and chief conceptualist of an automated teller machine, an idea he said he thought of while waiting in line at a Dallas Bank. At the time (1968) Don Wetzel was the Vice President of Product Planning at *Docutel*, the company that developed automated baggage-handling equipment.

The other two inventors listed on the Don Wetzel patent were **Tom Barnes**, the chief mechanical engineer and **George Chastain**, the electrical engineer. It took five million dollars to develop the ATM. The concept first began in 1968, a working prototype came about in 1969 and *Docutel* was issued a patent in 1973. The first Don Wetzel ATM was installed in a New York based Chemical Bank.

The first ATMs were off-line machines, meaning money was not automatically withdrawn from an account. The bank accounts were not (at that time) connected by a computer network to the ATM. Banks were at first very exclusive about who they gave ATM privileges to, giving them only to credit card holders (credit cards were used before ATM cards) with good banking records.

Don Wetzel, Tom Barnes and George Chastain developed the ATM cards, cards with a magnetic strip and a personal ID number to get cash. ATM cards had to be different from credit cards (then without magnetic strips) so account information could be included.

(After Mary Bellis, About.com Guide)

British Currency

Coins:

a penny (1p) – 1 pence;
 a two pence piece – 2 pence
 a fivepennie piece (5p) – 5 pence;
 a tenpenny piece (10p) – 10 pence;
 a twentypenny piece (20p) – 20 pence;
 a fifty pence piece (50p) – fifty pence;
 a pound (£1) – a pound.

Banknotes: 1, 5, 10, 20, pound bills.

Common Slang Term	Amount
nicker / quid	£1
lady (fiver)	£5
tenner	£10
score	£20
pony	£25
ton	£100
monkey	£500
grand	£1000
folding stuff	In general, all paper money

The U.S. Currency

Coins:

a penny (1c) – 1 cent;
 a nickel (5c) – 5 cents;
 a dime (10c) – 10 cents;
 a quarter (25c) – 25 cents;
 a half-dollar (50c) – 50 cents;
 a silver dollar

Banknotes:

1, 5, 10, 20, 50, 100 dollar bills.

Sample Vocabulary Test to Module 3

1. Choose the correct answer:

1. A secret personal identification number used when one operates the ATM is called:
a) PIN number; b) VAT number; c) ATM number
2. To get the money back, when an article purchased is unsatisfactory means
a) to have your money refunded; b) to haggle about the prices; c) to queue
3. A tax paid on most goods and services when they are bought is called
a) a value added tax; b) an income tax; c) a corporation tax
4. A printed document proving that payment for goods has been made is called
a) a receipt; b) a cheque; c) a bank statement
5. A wheeled cart pushed by hand used for moving goods in a supermarket is called
a) a tram; b) a trolley; c) a checkout till
6. The word-combination *flea market* is translated into Ukrainian as
a) ринок, де продають тварин; b) ринок, де продають ношений одяг; c) ринок, де продають комах
7. Call in one word: an account where one deposits salary and then withdraws money to pay everyday bills
a) current account; b) savings account; c) bank loan
8. The word combination *to be in the black* is translated into Ukrainian as
a) сидіти в темряві; b) перевищити кредитний ліміт; c) перебувати в межах кредитного ліміту
9. A shop selling stockings, socks, and knitted underclothing is called
a) haberdashery; b) hosiery; c) millinery
10. The word *банкомат* is translated into English as
a) "hole in the wall" machine; b) direct bank transfer; c) credit crunch

2. Translate into English:

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 11. позичати у когось гроші; | 16. виплати по безробіттю; |
| 12. зчитувати датчиком штрих-код; | 17. побутова техніка; |
| 13. податок на додану вартість; | 18. кредитний дефіцит; |
| 14. розфасовані товари; | 19. відділ трикотажних виробів; |
| 15. вуличний торговець-дистриб'ютор; | 20. знімати гроші з рахунку. |

Module 4

Unit 4.1. Health and Fitness

Vocabulary: Visiting the doctor. Ailments and Illnesses.

Introductory reading

1. Read the text and find out the meaning of the target words (in bold type).

A.

The famous saying claims: **Health** is dearer than wealth. I think everyone would readily agree that if a person is not **healthy / sound** (in perfect physical and mental state) nothing can make him/her happy, even piles of money. Most people hate **to be ill** (*US sick*) because when you are not well you need **medical aid** and care. You have **to stay in bed**, **take your temperature** with a **thermometer**, **take pills, tablets, capsules** and **mixtures**, apply **ointments** (oily medicated formulation applied to the skin to cure or protect) and go to the **policlinic** to **consult doctors**...

If the **ailment / illness / disease** (the state of poor health) is serious, a person should be **treated/cured/healed** (to take a course of medical treatment to restore health) in the **hospital**. There you will **undergo** necessary medical procedures like **injections / (coll.) shots** (putting liquid into the body with a **syringe**), **IVs / intravenous therapy** (giving of liquid medicine directly into a vein), etc. and be under continuous control and care of **nurses** and doctors. In life-threatening conditions people call the **ambulance** (a motor vehicle designed to carry sick or injured people). Everyone knows the **emergency/acute care** phone number – 103.

If we have **fever** (abnormally high body temperature), your **physician**, also called: **G.P. (general practitioner) / medical doctor / therapist** (a person who practices general medicine) or **family doctor** comes to your home to examine you carefully **to diagnose** the illness you might **suffer from**. The doctor will **monitor** your **blood pressure** (the pressure exerted by the blood against the walls of the arteries) as high blood pressure is serious and can be dangerous. Then the doctor would probably also **take your pulse** to check that your **heart rate** (the number of heartbeats per minute) is normal. The doctor will listen to your breathing with a **stethoscope** (a medical instrument for listening to the

sounds made within the body, consisting of a hollow disc that transmits the sound through hollow tubes to earpieces) – particularly if you have a heart disease or **chest infection**. If you need **medication / medicine** (a medicament), a doctor will write you a **prescription** (doctor's written instructions containing the list of medicines and the way they should be taken). You can get your medication at **the chemist's (U.S. drug store)**. If you have fever, the doctor may prescribe you **antifebrile / antipyretic** and **sedative** (having a soothing, calming, or tranquilizing effect) medicines; if you suffer from some **pain/ache (headache, earache, stomach-ache, etc.)**, you will be prescribed **analgesics/pain-killers**. If you suffer from **insomnia** (cannot sleep well), the doctor may prescribe you **sleeping pills**. And he will definitely prescribe you **vitamins**. If you follow the doctor's directions, you'll soon **recover** (restore oneself to normal state of health). You will be on a **sick leave** till you recover. Students are given **medical certificates**.

In the polyclinic you can **undergo a check-up** (a medical examination, taken at regular intervals to verify a normal state of health or discover a disease in its early stages). It is a very good habit to have annual check-ups for **prevention** of many diseases. Doctors say it is always easier to prevent than to cure. You will **do a blood count/blood test, be X-rayed**, and probably undergo **an ultrasonic/ultrasound scanning** (an ultrasound-based diagnostic imaging technique used to visualize internal organs, their size, structures and possible pathologies). In the polyclinic you can consult various specialists: **a surgeon** (a medical practitioner who specializes in surgery, that is operates on people), **an oculist/eye doctor, a neuropathologist, ear, nose and throat specialist, dermatologist, endocrinologist** and many other specialists. **Dentists / stomatologists** and **psychiatrists** do not usually examine their patients in the polyclinic; they practice in separate clinics or their private offices. Many illnesses are treated by G.P. Thus, therapists treat people for **cold, running nose, cough, sore throat, pneumonia, bronchitis, influenza / flu / grippe, quinsy / tonsillitis** and many other diseases. If you suffer from **abscess / boil, burn / scald, injury / wound**, you should consult a surgeon. Dermatologists treat for **skin diseases** and **allergies**. Children usually consult a **paediatrician / children's doctor**.

Of course, you can also visit the doctor for a number of other reasons. For example, if you are going abroad on holiday, you might

also need **to be inoculated** (to have preventive injections of **vaccines**) against **infectious diseases** (**diphtheria, cholera, whooping cough, chicken pox, rabies, mumps, measles, German measles, etc.**). Inoculations help **to acquire immunity** (resistance to infections). Anyway it is much better if you to take care of yourself and do not **fall ill / catch a disease**.

B.

Medical specialists are experts in certain fields of medicine. They either treat specific parts of the body, such as the back or the brain, or they specialize in certain diseases, such as cancer. **Family doctors** keep a list of local specialists and can help patients choose the right specialist for each medical issue. In many cases specialists require a referral from a family doctor before they will see a patient.

Here is a list of the most common types of specialists:

allergist	specializes in determining food and environmental allergies
anaesthesiologist	specializes in pain prevention during surgery
cardiologist	heart specialist
chiropractor	back specialist
fertility specialist	helps people who have difficulty getting pregnant
gynaecologist	specializes in women's needs
massage therapist	specializes in muscle relaxation
naturopath	specializes in natural cures and remedies
neurologist	brain specialist
obstetrician	specialist for pregnant women
occupational therapist	specializes in workplace health
oncologist	tumour specialist, including cancer
ophthalmologist	specializes in eye diseases
physical therapist	specializes in the body's movement
podiatrist	foot specialist
radiologist	specializes in imaging tests

C. English words connected with injury

Word	Explanation	Example of usage	Ukrainian equivalent
Boil	a red painful swelling caused by bacterial infection of the skin	You'll need to go to the doctor to have that boil lanced (<i>to lance – to puncture and clean</i>).	нагноєння
Lump	any small swelling or tumour	I have a strange lump on my arm. I wonder what caused it.	набряк, пухлина
Rash	allergic reaction which makes your skin go red	When she used the soap her skin came out in a rash.	висипання
Scab	dry skin that forms over a cut	Don't pick at your scab – you might make it bleed.	струп (на рані, що заживає)
Spot / pimple	red mark on the skin (much smaller than a boil)	When he was a teenager he had a lot of spots.	прищ
Swelling	an irritation or infection that makes the skin rise	After the wasp stung her, she had a swelling on her leg for days.	набряк (від подразнення чи інфекції)
Bruise	when the skin goes blue and yellow as a result of injure without breaking the skin	He has a bruise just under his eye. She fell down the stairs and bruised her arm.	синець
Bump	when you hit yourself and get a slight swelling	It's only a little bump – nothing serious. Ouch! I bumped my head on the desk!	незначна травма від забиття
Cut	when something sharp breaks your	She got a nasty cut on her hand while	поріз

	skin and you bleed	she was diving. He cut himself badly on the bread knife.	
Gash	deep cut	That's a nasty gash. You might need stitches. He gashed his hand badly on a piece of broken glass	глибокий сильний поріз
Graze	slight cut – not enough to bleed much	I got a small graze on my hand when I fell onto some gravel. When she was little, she was always grazing her knee.	незначна травма від по дряпання чи стирання шкіри
Itch	when a part of your body makes you want to scratch it	I've got a terrible itch where the mosquito bit me. My eyes are itching – this atmosphere is too smoky for me.	сверблячка
Scratch	like a graze, but more painful	He was picking berries and got a couple of scratches from the thorns. The cat scratched me – it stings a little.	подряпина
Sprain	twist a part of your body	My ankle looks swollen, but it's only a minor sprain. She sprained her ankle when she slipped on the ice.	розтягнення зв'язок; вивих

2. Fill in the chart using the information from Ex. 1.

Word	Ukrainian Equivalent
healthy/sound	
to be ill	
medical aid	
take one's temperature	
ointments	
to consult a doctor	
ailment/illness/disease	
injections/ <i>coll.</i> shots	
IVs/intravenous therapy	
nurses	
ambulance	
emergency/acute care	
fever	
physician/G.P. (general practitioner) / medical doctor/therapist	
to suffer from	
to monitor one's blood pressure	
to take one's pulse	
heart rate	
medication/medicine	
prescription	
the chemist's	
antifebrile/antipyretic	
sedative	
pain/ache	
analgesic/pain-killer	
insomnia	
to recover	
a sick leave	
medical certificate	
to undergo a check-up	
prevention	
to do a blood count/blood test	
to be X-rayed	

ultrasonic/ultrasound scanning	
a surgeon	
cough	
sore throat	
influenza/flu/grippe	
quinsy/tonsillitis	
abscess/boil	
burn/scald	
injury/wound	
to be inoculated	
whooping cough	
chicken pox	
rabies	
mumps	
measles; German measles	
to acquire immunity	
to fall ill/to catch a disease	

3. *Substitute the italicized words with their synonyms:*

1. I took the prescription and went to the *chemist's* to order the medicine. 2. When you have a toothache, you should consult a *stomatologist*. 3. That morning I felt *sick* and stayed in bed. 4. Aunt Margaret touched my forehead and gave me a thermometer. "You look pale. Take your temperature and I'll send for a *therapist*", she said. 5. His hand was so badly *injured* that the doctor decided *to give him a shot* of novocaine. 6. I'm afraid, your baby is *ill*; you'd better see a *paediatrician*. 7. I've consulted the *eye doctor*, said the old lady. "He checked my eyesight and prescribed me to wear glasses". 8. Infectious *diseases* are very dangerous. You must wash your hands very often to be safe. 9. "He must have caught *quinsy*", the doctor stated sadly. 10. Our *G.P.* is so experienced that he can treat everyone for all possible *ailments*.

4. *Study the following symptoms and decide what common diseases they might show. Use the words from the box for reference.*

allergies, pneumonia, heart attack, quinsy, the flu, indigestion/upset stomach, hypertension, burn/scald, measles, cold, hepatitis, stress
--

Rash; chest pain; headache; painful joints; blister; painful swallowing; running nose; bad cough; diarrhoea; fever; breathlessness; nausea; high blood pressure; stomach-ache, painful liver, insomnia.

5. Guess the Ukrainian names of the following diseases:

- 1) appendicitis; 2) diabetes; 3) hepatitis; 4) leukaemia; 5) tuberculosis; 6) diphtheria; 7) rheumatism; 8) cancer; 9) arthritis; 10) cholera; 11) grippe; 12) neurosis; 13) dysentery; 14) asthma; 15) malaria.

6. What do you think the doctor said to each of the following patients (Match the sentences):

1.	Anne with bad sunburn.	a)	Take vitamins three times a day after meals.
2.	Joanne who's broken her leg.	b)	You should go for walks in the evening – it's very relaxing.
3.	John who's off to the tropics.	c)	Rub a little on before going to bed each night.
4.	Paul with the flu.	d)	You shouldn't eat so much fried food.
5.	Liza who can't sleep well at night.	e)	You'll need to have some injections before you go.
6.	Sam who has a terrible cough.	f)	You really must stop smoking.
7.	Rose suffering from exhaustion.	g)	You'll have to have your leg put in plaster
8.	Ralf who's got a bad stomach.	h)	I think you should have total bed rest for a week.

7. What do we call:

- 1) allergic reaction which makes your skin go red; 2) doctor's written order or direction for the making up and use of a medicine; 3) a place where people are treated for illnesses or injuries; 4) a person who is receiving medical treatment; 5) a kind of device used for injecting liquids into the body; 6) a strip of material as used for binding round a wound or injury; 7) pills that contain a drug to encourage sleep; 8) organic substances which are present in foods (fruit, vegetables, etc) and are essential to the health of man; 9) an instrument for measuring temperature; 10) substances, usually in the form of pills, or tablets, or mixtures, used to treat diseases.

8. Fred has got a few marks on his body. Choose the ending to the sentences explaining the origin of the marks:

1.	This bite on my leg	a)	I got when crazy mosquitoes attacked me last night.
2.	This cut on my thumb	b)	I got when I went on a hike in too tight sneakers.
3.	This blister on my foot	c)	I got when I was operated on for appendicitis.
4.	These spots on my cheeks	d)	I got when my friend hit me in the eye during our quarrel.
5.	This bruise on my knee	e)	I got when I fell down while playing football.
6.	The black eye	f)	I got after I suffered from chicken pox.
7.	This scratch on my arm	g)	I got when I was peeling potatoes.
8.	This scar on my belly	h)	I got when I kicked my neighbour's bulldog.
9.	This rash on my chest	i)	I got when I was playing with my cat.
10.	These itching lumps everywhere	j)	I got after I ate too much chocolate (I am allergic to it).

9. Choose the appropriate explanation:

1.	bandage	a)	doctor's written instruction for the supply and use of a medicine;
2.	hospital	b)	adverse reaction of the organism to certain substances, especially particular foods, medicines, fur, dust, etc.;
3.	prescription	c)	a common illness accompanied by sneezing and running nose;
4.	a cold	d)	the art and science of prevention and cure of disease;
5.	ointment	e)	sorts of medical paste made from oil or fat and used on the skin (to heal injuries or roughness, or as a cosmetic means);
6.	medicine	f)	strip of material for binding round a wound or injury;

7.	surgeon	g)	condition of the body or the mind;
8.	cough	h)	act or sound of coughing;
9.	allergy	i)	a doctor who performs operations;
10.	health	j)	a place where people are treated for , nursed through their illnesses.

10. Say whom you would consult if you have:

1) toothache; 2) stomach-ache; 3) earache; 4) eye ache; 5) headache; 6) sore throat and cough; 7) insomnia; 8) fever; 9) abscess; 10) rash.

11. What medical problems might you have if...

1) you wear shoes that rub; 2) you eat too fast; 3) you smoke a lot; 4) you stay too long in the sun; 5) you eat food you're allergic to; 6) you run unusually fast (for a bus); 7) you eat food that is bad; 8) a mosquito bites you; 9) you get wet on a cold day; 10) you think you are not well all the time?

Reading

Pre-reading Activities

Answer the following questions.

1) What to your mind is essential for everyone to be healthy? 2) What do you usually do to be well? 3) What things should one stay away from not to fall ill? 4) What preventive steps would you suggest to avoid being infected with the flu / cold / pneumonia? 5) How can the healthy lifestyle help to make a successful career?

12. a) Read and translate the following text:

The Importance of Living a Healthy Lifestyle

How would it feel to rise early each day with abundant energy and a laser-sharp mind, completely free of aches and pains, lean and perfectly toned? Imagine your immune system in peak condition, protecting you from illness and disease. How would it feel to look in the mirror and see yourself at your ideal weight? This can be much more than an exercise in imagination. You can get it living a healthy lifestyle.

No one would argue that it's really great to be healthy. When you feel well, you can do things that you like, keep a job, live long and

enjoy it. When you are ill, you often feel weak and tired lacking energy to do your job perfectly, to spend time with your family or friends... The most unpleasant thing about all this is that mostly it is you who is responsible for your illness because you failed to take care of yourself. Realising this makes you even more irritated and sad. There are certain laws of health, which deserve particular attention, and they are so simple that even a child can learn them.

Certainly, taking care of yourself isn't going to eliminate diseases completely, but can help to reduce the number of times you do get ill. A constant supply of pure fresh air is indispensable to good health, thus every room in the house especially the bedrooms, should be properly ventilated. Perfect cleanliness is also essential. The skin is full of minute pores, cells, blood vessels and nerves. It "breathes" the way the lungs do. Therefore, the whole body should be washed as often as possible. Besides its importance to health, there is a great charm in cleanliness.

Most essential to our body is food. Our body is continually wasting energy, and it requires to be repaired by fresh substance. The food, which is to repair the loss, should be taken with due regard to the exercise and waste of the body. A juicy hamburger from *McDonalds* dripping with special sauce topped with cheese is not exactly considered a healthy meal. Our society today is busy and on the go at all times. It is so much easier to stop and get fast food and then continue on. A few simple changes to you diet can really help to balance your energy level: instead of a bag of chips and a can of pop – some fruit and a bottle of water; instead of grabbing some fast food – homemade descent meal. Eating fatty food causes overweight and increases the level of cholesterol. It's good to be moderate in eating. If you eat slowly, you will not overeat. Never swallow your food wholesale – you are provided with teeth for the purpose of chewing your food – and you will never complain of indigestion.

Besides, eating healthy foods and exercising also helps to build person's self-esteem. Many people who are overweight do not feel good about themselves. They want to be thinner, but instead of doing it the right way, they try crash diets that seem to do nothing at all about their condition or even worse – are harmful.

How do you think you will make your career if you are calling off ill all the time? Some simple physical activities can help: instead of

taking the elevator to your floor – climbing the stairs; instead of watching television on your break – a walk. It's a good idea to join up workout fitness centres that many employers offer. Twenty minutes three times a week is really all it takes to keep fit and even lose those few extra pounds.

Will you enjoy your life if you are but a complete ruin? Bad habits people often have these days drastically shorten their lives. We should abstain from everything that intoxicates. If you smoke, find a way to stop it for good. If you drink a lot, try moderation. Giving up the habits you know are bad for you can help you stay alive long and enjoy this long life.

It is now time to make our choice. A healthy lifestyle, healthy food, moderation in eating and drinking, reasonable hours of labour and study, regularity in exercise, recreation and rest, cleanliness and many other essentials will benefit each of us and lay the foundations for good health and long life. Will we continue to live as unhealthy blobs, or will we take a little time out of our busy schedules so that we can live longer, raise our self-esteem, and feel great? Make a choice!

(<http://www.cheathouse.com>)

b) Learn the following words.

Abundant – значна кількість; lean – стрункий; to eliminate – усувати; indispensable – невід’ємний; thus/therefore – тому, отже; minute pores, cells, blood vessels – крихітні пори, клітини, кровоносні судини; to repair the loss – поповнювати втрату; with due regard to – з належною увагою до...; dripping – той, що стікає краплями; pop – солодкий газований напій; moderate – помірний; to swallow – ковтати; to complain – скаржитися; crash diet – інтенсивна дієта, що швидко діє; harmful – шкідливий; to call off – відмінати, відкладати; drastically – різко, кардинально; to abstain – утримуватися; recreation – відновлення сил; blob – (сленг.) розмазня.

c) Mark in the text the statements you agree with. Are there any statements you disagree with? Give your reasons.

d) Write out all the rules for keeping oneself in good health suggested in the text above. Add some rules of your own.

13. Find in the text the English equivalents for the following Ukrainian words and phrases.

1) потурбуватися про себе; 2) покинути погані звички; 3) закласти основи; 4) втратити зайві кілька фунтів; 5) збалансувати рівень енергії; 6) поповнити втрату; 7) підняти власну самооцінку; 8) цілковита руїна; 9) ковтати їжу цілою; 10) заслужувати на особливу увагу.

14. Translate into English using the words and expressions from Ex. 9(a).

1. Я полюблю жирну їжу, але вживаю її помірно, оскільки вона спричиняє зайву вагу та підвищує рівень холестерину. 2. Якщо ти не припиниш їсти жирну їжу й солодощі, палити, якщо не почнеш турбуватися про своє здоров'я, то скоро перетворишся на товстого хворобливого розмазню. 3. Поглянь на себе! Ця твоя інтенсивна дієта не лише не подіяла, вона ще й нашкодила тобі. 4. Є кілька правил здорового способу життя, таких простих, що навіть дитина здатна їх вивчити. 5. Всього лише незначні зміни в твоєму харчуванні здатні значно покращити твоє здоров'я і зовнішній вигляд. А як при цьому зросте твоя самооцінка... я вже й не казатиму.

Grammar Revision: Clauses of Time and Condition.

Mind! The Future Simple is not used in time clauses (introduced by *when...; while...; as soon as...; before...; after...; till/until*), and condition (introduced by *if*); the Present tense is being used instead.

E.g.: We'll go to the park if there **is** no rain. I'll cook the pie while you **are** writing the letter. I won't speak with him until he **apologizes**.

15. Match the parts of the following sentences. There can be many variants.

1.	If you bump into the corner of a table,	a)	you'll probably get a bruise.
2.	If you slip on some ice,	b)	you might hurt yourself badly.
3.	When you cut yourself with a sharp knife,	c)	you will probably burn yourself.
4.	If you drop a glass on the floor,	d)	it will probably break into a lot of sharp pieces.

5.	If you touch a hot pan,	e)	you will probably be very careful.
6.	If you fall down from the tree,	f)	you might break an arm or a leg.
7.	If your floor is wet while you're carrying sharp scissors,	g)	you will probably bleed.
8.	When your small child is in the kitchen while you're cooking,	h)	you will only probably hurt yourself slightly.
9.	If there are clothes or toys all over the floor,	i)	you will have to watch him/her very attentively.
10.	If you stand on a shaky stool,	j)	someone will probably stumble against them.

16. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense (present or future).

A.

1. When he (return) I'll give him the key. 2. I shan't buy tomatoes till the price (come) down. 3. He (be) here before you go. 4. I (lend) you my cassette recorder whenever you want it. 5. I'll pay you when I (get) my cheque. 6. I (go) on doing it until he tells me to stop. 7. I'll buy that house when I (have) enough money. 8. As soon as she (learn) to type I'll get her a job. 9. Don't count on a salary increase before you actually (get) it. 10. We can't make any decision till he (arrive) here.

B.

1. If he (eat) all that he will be ill. 2. If he (read) in bad light he will ruin his eyes. 3. What will happen if my parachute (not open)? 4. If he (be) late we'll go without him. 5. If he (go) on telling lies nobody will believe a word he says. 6. Unless he (sell) more he won't get much commission. 7. If I lend you £10 when you (repay) me? 8. Unless you are more careful you (have) an accident. 9. If he (like) the house, will he buy it? 10. She won't open the door unless she (know) who it is.

Speaking

17. Answer the questions.

1. What do you usually do when you fall ill? 2. When do you send for a doctor? 3. Who is treated at the polyclinic, and who is

treated at the hospital? 4. What does the doctor do when he comes to examine you? 5. Why must one follow the doctor's directions? 6. When does one receive injections? 7. What do you feel when you caught the flu? 8. What are the symptoms of tonsillitis (cold, allergies)? 9. Who do you consult when you have a toothache (eye ache, earache, sore throat, abscess, burn)? 10. Who operates on people? 11. How does a sick person look like? 12. What infectious diseases do you know? 13. When is one put on a sick leave? 14. What must one do if an accident happens? 15. What do you usually do to cure a cold (headache, toothache)? 16. How long does it take you to recover from a cold? 17. What must we do so as not to have complications after a cold (the flu)? 18. Are all kinds of complications easily cured? 19. Have you ever been operated on? Was it serious? 20. Who usually makes out prescriptions? Can a nurse do it?

18. Do the quiz. Which answers do you think are correct? (More than one answer is possible.) Motivate your choice.

1. If you burn yourself on a hot pan:

a) you should put butter or oil on the burn; b) you should put a plaster on it; c) you should put lots of cold water on it.

2. If you've got a temperature:

a) you should stay in bed and keep warm; b) you should take aspirin or paracetamol; c) you should rest and keep cool.

3. If you've got a bad cold:

a) you should go to the doctor's and get some medicine; b) you should take aspirin; c) you should go to bed and have a hot drink.

4. If you want to lose weight in a healthy way:

a) you should stop eating potatoes, bread and pasta; b) you should take regular exercise; c) you should eat less fat and sugar, and more fruit and vegetables.

5. If you are taking a prescription of antibiotics:

a) you should take them at exactly the same time every day; b) you should finish the prescription; c) you shouldn't drink alcohol.

6. If you've got bad backache:

a) you should go to bed and rest until it gets better, b) you should go for short walks and keep moving, c) you shouldn't lift anything heavy.

7. If you have a headache:

a) you should immediately send for a doctor and go to bed; b) you should take some pain-killer and stay in a quiet place for some time; c) you should have a cup of strong tea or coffee.

8. If you have a toothache:

a) you should immediately consult the dentist; b) you should rinse your mouth with warm brandy; c) you should tie a piece of garlic to your wrist.

9. If a wasp bit you:

a) you should put some ice on the hurt place; b) you should also take some antiallergic medicine; c) you should drink much water to avoid intoxication.

10. If you cut your hand:

a) you should rinse the wound with some antiseptic liquid; b) you should stop bleeding by means of sterile bandage or cotton wool; c) you should cover the wound with antibacterial bandage or adhesive plaster.

19. a) Look through the Information File below.

Information File

The level of medical service both in Britain and the USA is very high. Health care is free in England (except private health care) and every employed citizen is obliged to pay a weekly amount of money to the National Health Service. The sum necessary to run medical services is very high and a large part of it comes from weekly payments.

Health care is very expensive in the USA. Everything must be paid for. For example, in the USA if you turn to a city hospital, you should pay at least \$50. Separately you will pay for a consultation, \$50-60 for a visit at the least. In addition, medicine will cost you at least \$15-20. You need a prescription to purchase many drugs in American drugstores.

If you are a foreigner, you can get medical service free of charge in medical institutions attached to different charities and religious organizations.

b) Compare the systems of health care in Great Britain, the USA and Ukraine.

c) What do you think should be changed in the health service of Ukraine? Discuss these problems with your group-mates.

20. Prepare short conversations in small groups.

A has a health problem, B and C give advice. Some is good, some is bad! (see the Model and Words for Reference below).

Model:

A.: I've got terrible pain in my knee!

B.: Well, you should go to bed and rest.

A.: Really?

C.: Mmm... I'm not so sure. I think you should keep moving – go for walks, run, jump and things like that.

A: Oh, right.

Words for reference: toothache; splitting headache and fever; terrible backache; red itching spots everywhere; pain in me chest; sharp pain in the left ear; bleeding scratch on the arm; a mosquito bite; a blister on my foot; sneezing and cough; nausea; running nose.

21. a) Read the Information File.

Information file

Two or three centuries ago people had much shorter lives – the average age was forty-five. But this was mainly because a lot of babies died. If people survived to be adults, they could often live to be seventy or even eighty, like today.

Having children was much more dangerous than it is today. Families often used to have ten or twelve children, but many babies died, and unfortunately many women died in childbirth.

In those days they didn't know how to cure all the diseases that we can cure now. Many people didn't have enough to eat, or did not have enough money to pay for doctors. Even if you had a doctor, some of their methods were very strange. They used to believe that cutting open their patients and 'bleeding' cured almost any problem – unfortunately, it often killed them instead!

And people knew less about hygiene in the past. Even rich people didn't use to wash very often, and most poor people didn't have toilets or clean water. It was difficult to keep food fresh too, so they used to cook with a lot of strong spices to cover the taste of the bad meat.

Work in pairs:

b) Two or three hundred years ago most people didn't live as long as we do today. Think of three reasons why. Discuss the problems of life longevity nowadays and in the past;

c) Think of the factors that influence the life longevity of people in the modern world. Give your reasons.

22. a) Read the opinions of several people as to smoking.

Why do young people smoke and how to make them stop it...

Roger, 22:

I think that the teens are affected by the wrong fashions to smoke and want to do something by themselves. They want to be free in their life as a result they smoke cigarettes. Then, the family influences people a lot. So, if someone in the family smokes, the child will probably do the same as soon as there is a chance...

However there is no best way to stop young people smoking. We don't control them but we have a good choice in order to solve this problem. For example, I don't smoke, because I realize that it's so bad for health. It causes cancer and a lot of lung diseases. The smokers smell terribly... Smoking is not good anyway. Additionally many people around are annoyed by them. As for me, I rarely like when someone is smoking a cigarette at my presence. I immediately try to go away because for me to breath the smoke is the same as to smoke myself. It's just my opinion; it may be right or wrong.

Maria, 34:

Well, I don't think I would tell my kids whether smoking is right or wrong. It's because they don't mind if it's right or wrong if they want to do it. The more you forbid it, the more they desire to break your rules. Don't you remember a time that you craved for breaking certain rules? Well, I have. The best ways, to me, are to take smokers to a hospital so they could have a talk with smoking people who are under cure for certain diseases because of smoking; to show them pictures of the state ill lungs caused by smoking; to spend more time with them; to keep an eye on them; to tell them how many harmful chemicals a cigarette has. The last one is quite uncertain since some teens are weird (no offense!). I'm afraid they might say, "Cool! I'm a living experiment of smoking. They should pay me for smoking." Anyway, I think, nothing can really help here... No advice from parents or teachers will be taken into account... The smoker should decide himself to stop smoking and only then he'll succeed.

Natalie, 19:

I have read all the messages containing the opinions of the members of club about smoking. I don't agree with some of them. One

of them: "the family influences a lot on a person". My parents don't smoke but I do. My cousin's parents smoke and she doesn't. I can find a thread here: I never felt smoke at home so for me to try a cigarette was something new, interesting, that I have never tasted before. She (my cousin) inhaled smoke since her childhood and she started to hate it inside her mind and she understood by her second ego she would never smoke. So she doesn't smoke now.

I have a good family. My mother is a teacher. When she knew that I smoked she tried to explain me in an understandable way that it is a bad habit. I understood her but I didn't give up smoking. You should understand that everything depends on a person himself. It's much worse when we try to make somebody give up smoking. A person's nature is arranged so that if we make him/her do something he/she will do it conversely. The comprehension of the fact "I should give up smoking" must come itself. The other thing is that it can come too late.

Jack, 20:

Like lots of members mentioned, the age of smoking cigarette is decreasing. This is a serious problem. Cigarette advertisements always promote to the public that smoking is cool, it means maturity and so forth. I think the ways to solve the smoking youngster's problem include: 1) education: to correct the youth's attitude toward smoking, (I approve of showing them the dark rotten lungs, no matter in pictures or personally, as it was mentioned here); 2) price policies: to push up cigarettes' prices so that they were not so easy-accessible for the youth; 3) prohibition: since people are addicted to cigarettes, then why doesn't the Government just ban it, list it as one kind of drugs? Besides, I always think that smoking cigarettes is also causing air pollution. It is unendurable for people who do not smoke. Furthermore, most of the people who get lung cancer mostly are the ones who were close to smokers.

I also approve of the measures taken in Spain! Prohibition of smoking in most public places! Prohibition of advertising for smoking and cigarettes! If freedom means making health bad, I won't put freedom in my priorities.

b) Express your views on the problem discussed. What issues do you agree/disagree with?

c) What do you think can help to make young people stop smoking or at least smoke less?

d) *Do you smoke? Why? Are you going to give it up? Can you give up smoking any time? What ways of giving up smoking suggested in the text do you consider worth trying? Why?*

23. * *Highlight the meanings of the proverbs, making up short situations. Tell them in class.*

After dinner rest a while, after supper walk a mile
Eat well, drink in moderation, and sleep sound, in these three
good health abound.

Glutton: one who digs his grave with his teeth.
He who has health, has hope; and he who has hope, has
everything.

Hygiene is two thirds of health.
If the patient dies, the doctor has killed him, but if he gets well,
the saints have saved him.

If you wish to die young, make your physician your heir.
A good surgeon has an eagle's eye, a lion's heart, and a lady's hand.
An apple a day keeps the doctor away.

An ounce of prevention is worth a pound of cure.

Bitter pills may have blessed effects.

Doctors make the worst patients.

Early to bed and early to rise, makes a man healthy, wealthy and wise.

God cures and the physician takes the fee.

Health is better than wealth.

The first step to health is to know that we are sick.

The head and feet keep warm, the rest will take no harm.

Grammar Revision: Sequence of Tenses; Indirect Speech

24. a) *Rewrite the text in indirect speech. (Mind the rules of sequence of tenses).*

Let Me Feel Your Pulse.

Then my doctor took me to see a consulting physician. "Have you a pain in the back of your head?" he asked. I told him I had not. "Shut your eyes", he ordered, "put your feet close together, and jump backwards as far as you can."

I always was a good backward jumper with my eyes shut, so I obeyed. My head struck the edge of the bathroom door, which had

been left open and was only three feet away. The doctor was very sorry. He had overlooked the fact that the door was open. He closed it.

"Now touch your nose with your right forefinger", he said.

"Where is it?" I asked timidly.

"On your face", said he.

"I mean my right forefinger", I explained.

"Oh, excuse me", he said apologetically. He reopened the bathroom door, and I took my finger out of the crank of it. After I had performed the marvellous finger and nose fit, I said:

"I do not wish to deceive you as to symptoms, doctor; I really have something like a pain in the back of my head".

He ignored the symptom and examined my heart carefully. "Now", he said, "gallop like a horse for about five minutes around the room." I gave the best imitation I could of a horse. He held up his forefinger within three inches of my nose.

"Look at your finger", he commanded. "Now look at the door. At my finger. At the door." This – for about three minutes. He explained that this was a test of the action of the brain. It seemed easy to me. I never once mistook his finger for the door.

(after O'Henry)

25. Transform the sentences into indirect speech:

He asked: 1. What college do you study at? 2. "Has she been ill for two weeks?" 3. What exams have you already passed? 4. Why have you made up your mind to become a dentist? 5. Was that lady your patient last year? 6. How many times a day do you have to take these pills? 7. Are you taking antibiotics? 8. When will you come to have a consultation? 9. Do you often go to the seaside for rest? 10. Have you been waiting for me long?

He said: 1. "I am examining my patients now". 2. "Your father has been ill for the whole summer". 3. "I'll come tomorrow as I'll be reading a report at 6 o'clock". 4. "I've been working as a surgeon for 5 years". 5. "I graduated from high school last year". 6. "Tom, get up, or else you'll be late". 7. "Don't make so much noise. Turn down the music, please". 8. "I'll become a general practitioner after graduating from the medical college". 9. "He broke his leg last winter when skiing in the mountains". 10. "The agreement will be signed tomorrow".

26. Read and translate the following jokes. Tell them in reported speech.

Patient: Tell me truly, doctor, what are my chances of getting better?

Doctor: Just 100 per cent! Statistics show that only nine out of ten die from your disease – and nine of my patients have already died from it. You are the tenth!

Patient: But doctor, are you sure I'll be better? I've heard of cases where the doctor has made the wrong diagnosis, and treated someone for pneumonia who afterward died of typhoid fever.

Doctor: Nonsense! When I treat a patient for pneumonia, he dies of pneumonia.

Physician: You have a local infection in your system. It will probably be necessary to pull out some teeth.

Patient: (*removing plates of false teeth*) Here are all of them, doctor.

– This is the second day your wife has had a toothache. Why don't you do something about it?

– I have, I've put cotton wool in my ears.

“Don't trouble yourself to stretch your mouth any wider,” said a dentist to his patient, “I intend to stand outside to draw your tooth.”

Patient: “Do you extract teeth painlessly?”

Dentist: “Not always – the other day I nearly dislocated my wrist.”

“Is the doctor treating her for her nervousness?”

“Oh, dear, no. She's rich enough to have psychoneurosis”

“Isn't Doctor Blank your throat specialist?”

“I thought he was until he sent me his bill. He's a skin specialist.”

Patient: “Will the anaesthetic make me sick?”

Doctor: “No, I think not.”

Patient: “How long will it be before I know anything?”

Doctor: “Aren't you expecting too much of an anaesthetic?”

Unit 4.2.

Keeping Fit

Vocabulary: Keeping Fit

diet (to be on a diet; to keep for a diet)	дієта (бути на дієті, притримуватися дієти)
dietary product	дієтичний продукт
nutrient	поживна речовина
protein	білок
carbohydrate	вуглевод
nourishing	поживний
chubby/fat/stout/obese	гладкий, повний
thin/slim/slender/svelte	худий, стрункий
well-balanced	збалансований
caloricity/caloric value	калорійність
junk food	жирна калорійна їжа
exercise/training:	фізичні вправи/тренування:
jogging	довільний біг
body-building; shaping	комплекс вправ для підтримання фігури в належному стані та формі
aerobics	інтенсивні вправи, спрямовані на насичення тіла киснем, які допомагають швидко скинути зайву вагу, покращуючи діяльність серцево-судинної системи
callanetics	каланетика (комплекс аеробних статичних вправ, спрямованих на розтягнення та скорочення м'язів)
pilates	популярний гібрид каланетики та йоги, комплекс фізіологічних вправ якого спрямований на формування гарного, гнучкого тіла шляхом опрацювання всіх груп м'язів, суглобів та хребта
belly dance	"танець живота" – тонізує м'язи живота, укріплює внутрішні органи, розвиває гнучкість та пластичність завдяки почерговому розслабленню та розтягуванню м'язів

fitness-yoga	фітнес-йога – комбінує елементи хатха-йоги з традиційними вправами класичної хореографії, розтягування м'язів, що в комплексі підтримує тонус м'язів, гнучкість, покращує будову тіла, знімає стрес, відновлює фізичну й душевну рівновагу.
--------------	---

Reading

Pre-reading Activities

Answer the following questions.

1) What do you usually do to keep fit? 2) Do you always eat healthy food? 3) What is the present-day ideal of a beautiful body? 4) Do you jog in the morning? Do you exercise in some fitness club? 5) Do you agree that different diets can help both to build a beautiful body and improve one's health? Give your reasons.

27. a) Read, translate and dramatize the dialogue:

Keeping Fit.

Juliet: Hey, Maddy! How long am I supposed to gallop around this park? Let's have a break... I'm very tired... and cold. Ouch! I'm afraid, I've got a corn on my right foot. Look! It's a blister! Oh, how it hurts... These sneakers are a bit too tight for me.

Madeline: Come on, let's run, Julie, we've just started jogging. Stop whimpering and let's have a good training. Lots of people are jogging along in the park every morning for their health. Look at those girls over there. They are slim, fresh, and pretty, and they feel well...

J. (breathing hard): How do you know that they feel well? Can one feel well after such an exhausting training? – Hardly... If I don't stop now, my husband will be a widower and you'll lose your best friend! "They are slim, fresh and pretty"... They have frail constitution, that's the reason. You were always delicate too, and I was always plump, you know. Therefore, what's the use of torturing myself if I'll never become svelte.

M.: Oh yes...you, poor thing! Look at you! You are getting fat, your complexion is sallow, and you cough all the time. I'm sure you will lose you weight if you jog regularly and give up junk food.

J.: What do you call "junk food"? A few custard cakes I eat with my coffee, or a tiny pizza for dinner from time to time?

M.: Yes, my dear, and dozens of donuts, and your favourite pineapple muffins, and hamburgers with chips, and hotdogs you eat “now and then” during one single day... Besides, I saw your “tiny pizza” – it covers the whole kitchen table, and you drink five cups of coffee a day. You have to stop eating all this if you want to look and feel well.

J.: Would you like to see me chewing a cabbage leaf and asparagus, like a rabbit, or eating oats all day long, like a horse? What am I supposed to eat? No one can live on that “healthy food”. I always hated Cornflakes, and those salads, fruit, and vegetables cause nothing but indigestion and hiccups.

M.: You might try to choose the diet that would be good for you. You know, Julie, two years ago I had the same problem. I wasn’t careful for my health: I smoked, I ate bacon and eggs, home fries, toast and coffee for breakfast at my favourite coffee shop. For lunch, I stopped at the pizza shop for three slices and a large Coke. In the afternoon the ice cream tasted so refreshing...Of course, I gained weight. I began to feel tired and sometimes took a nap in the afternoon. I was breathless after climbing the stairs. In addition, there was one more thing, Julie, – I looked like a mountain, and I hated myself for my potbelly and sluggishness. So...

J.: So... You consulted your doctor, he put you on a miraculous diet, and you tried it, and now look like a Barbie-doll...

M.: Well, actually, I fell in love, Julie... with a very handsome man, my workmate. Certainly, I realised he would never pay attention to such a shapeless figure. At first, I felt depressed. Then I found out that he jogged every morning in the nearest park, and he swam in the local pool twice a week. I started jogging in the same park and joined the local gym. And, of course, I consulted my doctor.

J.: How romantic... You were always strong-willed, Maddy. I mean you managed to give up eating all those tasty things for the sake of love...

M.: Well, not only for the sake of love, but also for the sake of my own health, Julie. It was not that easy, you know. I had to change all my habits. First of all, I gave up smoking. Now I eat a light breakfast and take a few apples with me. At lunch, I eat a large salad...

J.: Oh, yes! I knew that! That irreplaceable salad...

M.: Yes, you are right. I like salads now, and I don't eat ice cream anymore. I prefer frozen yoghurt instead. Besides, I play basketball, I roller-skate, I jog every day and I exercise in aerobic dancing and shaping in the nearest fitness-club twice a week. And you can see the result – I'm slim and no longer tired. I feel well; I'm graceful and look younger.

J.: Well, Maddy, a very interesting story indeed, but what about the man? Did he finally fall in love with you?

M.: OK, dear. I'll tell you the end of the story after our training... Let's run, come on, Julie, follow me...

J.: That's unfair, Maddy! You've roused my curiosity – and no happy end? Hey! Wait for me!..

(from: *Brush up Your Everyday English* by T. Venkel, O. Val)

b) Learn the words and expressions:

I've got a corn – у мене – мозоль; to whimper – пхинькати, скиглити; exhausting – виснажливий; plump – товстий; poor thing – бідолаха; custard cakes – заварне тістечко; muffin – свіжоспечена солодка булочка; oats – овес; to cause – спричиняти; hiccup – гикавка; to take a nap – поспати; potbelly – обвислий живіт; sluggishness – незграбність, неповороткість; for the sake of... – заради...; irreplaceable – незамінний; to rouse one's curiosity – збуджувати цікавість.

c) Name all the steps Madeline undertook to become svelte.

d) Find in the text English equivalents of the following sentences:

1. Я віддаю перевагу замороженому йогурту. 2. Він би ніколи не звернув увагу на таку безформну фігуру. 3. На обід я з'їдаю велику порцію салату. 4. Ці салати, овочі й фрукти спричиняють лише розлад шлунка й гикавку. 5. Мені довелося змінити всі мої звички. 6. Я не піклувалася про своє здоров'я. 7. Я бачила твою "крихітну піцу" – вона вкриває увесь кухонний стіл, і ти п'єш п'ять чашок кави на день. 8. Я маю на увазі, що ти змогла перестати їсти всю ту смачну їжу заради кохання. 9. Спершу я впала в депресію. 10. Ти гладшаєш, твоє обличчя – хворобливо-жовте і ти весь час кашляєш.

Speaking

28. a) *Look through the Information File below. Consult the dictionary if necessary.*

Information File

There's nothing mysterious about aerobic exercise. It simply refers to the kind and level of physical effort that increases the body's consumption of oxygen. In fact, "aerobic" means "needing oxygen in order to live".

When we exercise enough to need more oxygen, our heart and lungs are forced to work harder to provide it. When they work harder, a lot of good things happen. The heart is conditioned to beat more strongly. As a result, it pumps more oxygenated blood to all our tissues nourishing them better. Though we gain a faster heart rate during the exercise, the heart returns to its resting state quickly. In other words, it works much more efficiently. These benefits translate into more protection against heart attacks. Our capacity to take in oxygen and discharge carbon dioxide also improves; our lungs become better conditioned. As we gain in physical fitness, we become able to engage in more strenuous activity with less fatigue.

There's confusion in some people's minds about what belongs to an aerobic exercise and what doesn't. Jogging is definitely aerobic. So are swimming, brisk walking and bicycling, as well as aerobic dancing. Tennis is not always an aerobic exercise because it isn't continuous. In order for an activity to qualify as aerobic, it has to be somewhat vigorous and sustained, maybe 15 minutes or a half hour, at least 3 or 4 times a week. Improvement in fitness comes over time, not overnight.

b) *Discuss the talking point of the text. Work in pairs.*

- *Think of your own comments as to the effect of aerobic exercises on one's health and shape;*

- *Name some other kinds of sports that are not aerobic;*

- *Compare the efficiency of aerobics with pilates, callanetics and yoga;*

- *Speak on the fitness exercises you personally tried (what were they? what were the results? was it very time-consuming/expensive/physically hard?)*

Writing

29. *Write an essay on one of the topics suggested*

1. You are what you eat.

2. Inside every fat man there is a thin man struggling to get out.

3. Without physical fitness there can be no mental fitness.
4. Drinking alcohol is immoral and should be banned.

30. *Translate the following sentences into English:*

1. Якщо ви будете займатися аеробікою по 45 хвилин принаймні двічі на тиждень, ви через місяць позбудетесь зайвої ваги. 2. Ті дівчата виглядають гарно, тому що в них витончена будова тіла, а ти завжди була повненька. 3. Я займався різними видами фітнесу, та серед усіх мені найбільше сподобалася програма з фітнес-йоги "Тіло та Дух". 4. Теніс не вважається аеробною вправою, бо не завжди триває досить довго. 5. Хлопець щоранку бігає в місцевому парку. 6. Я завжди турбуюся про власне здоров'я, тому займаюся у місцевому фітнес-центрі. 7. Здорова їжа і фізичні вправи – невід'ємна частина підтримання доброго здоров'я. 8. "Танець живота" – не просто вид мистецтва, а й чудова вправа для розвитку гнучкості й пластики. 9. Пілатес – це універсальна система фізіологічних вправ, якою можуть займатися люди різного віку і фізичної форми. 10. Бодібілдинг та шейпінг формують гарне тіло й покращують здоров'я.

Unit 4.3. Ecology and Health

Vocabulary: Environmental Problems

31. a) *Read the words, explanations and fill in the chart.*

acid rain	rain which contains large amounts of harmful chemicals as a result of burning substances such as coal and oil	<i>кислотний дощ</i>
biodegradable	able to decay naturally and harmlessly	
biodiversity	the number and variety of plant and animal species that exist in a particular environmental area or in the world generally, or the problem of preserving and protecting this	

carbon monoxide	the poisonous gas formed by the burning of carbon, especially in the form of car fuel	
climate change	drastic changes in the general weather conditions usually found in a particular place	
deforestation	the cutting down of trees in a large area; the destruction of forests by people	
desertification	the process by which land changes into desert	
disposable products	describes an item that is intended to be thrown away after use	
drought	a long period when there is little or no rain	
endangered species	endangered birds/plants/species animals or plants which may soon not exist because there are very few now alive	
environment	the air, water and land in or on which people, animals and plants live	
extinction	the process of being destroyed so that something no longer exists	
fumes	strong, unpleasant and sometimes dangerous gas or smoke	
natural resources	things such as minerals, forests, coal, etc. which exist in a place and can be used by people	
global warming	a gradual increase in world temperatures caused by polluting gases such as	

	carbon dioxide which are collecting in the air around the Earth and preventing heat escaping into space	
greenhouse effect	an increase in the amount of carbon dioxide and other gases in the atmosphere which is believed to be the cause of a gradual warming of the surface of the Earth	
green peace	an organization that fights for the protection of the environment	
renewable energy	describes a form of energy that can be produced as quickly as it is used	
oil slick	a layer of oil that is floating over a large area of the surface of the sea, usually because an accident has caused it to escape from a ship or container	
ozone layer	a layer of air high above the Earth, which contains a lot of ozone, and which prevents harmful ultraviolet light from the sun from reaching the Earth	
pollution	damage caused to water, air, etc. by harmful substances or waste	
to recycle waste	to collect and treat rubbish to produce useful materials which can be used again	
sustainable development	a development that is causing little or no damage to the environment and therefore able to continue for a long time	

unleaded petrol	describes a type of petrol or other substance that does not contain lead	
use up natural resources	The degradation of natural resources because of human pressure	
waste	unwanted matter or material of any type, often that which is left after useful substances or parts have been removed	
rubbish / litter / (US) garbage	something that has been thrown away	

b) Read and translate the following sentences. Mind the use of the target words.

1. A new National Biological Survey to protect species habitat and *biodiversity* has been issued recently. 2. *Biodegradable* packaging helps to limit the amount of harmful chemicals released into the atmosphere. 3. *Deforestation* is destroying large areas of tropical rain forest. 4. It is very convenient to use *disposable* nappies. 5. This year a severe *drought* has ruined the crops. 6. Certain chemicals have been banned because of their damaging effect on the *environment*. 7. Many species of plants and animals are in danger of *extinction*. 8. Petrol *fumes* always make me feel ill. 9. Some *natural resources*, such as natural gas and fossil fuel, cannot be replaced. 10. There are some *renewable energy* sources such as wind and wave power. 11. Scientists believe that there is a hole in the *ozone layer*.

32. Answer the following questions.

1. What in your opinion are the most serious environmental problems nowadays? Do you think that our planet needs protection? Why? 2. Do you think that ecology and people's health are connected? How? 3. What is "the green house effect"? How can it influence the climate on our planet? Why are forests on our planet disappearing fast? Why are rain forests so important for life on the earth? 4. What is the reason for the depletion of the ozone layer? 5. Is it safe and useful to spend holidays at the seaside near you nowadays? What makes seawaters dangerous nowadays? Why is it dangerous to dump industrial waste in

the sea? 6. Why are some species of animals becoming extinct nowadays? 7. Why is it not safe nowadays to be in the direct sunlight in certain places? 8. Where, in your opinion is it safer to live in terms of health – in the town or in the country? Why? 9. What role do industrial enterprises play in the pollution of the environment? 10. Do you think that a water shortage is a serious problem today? Why does this problem exist? How could it be solved? What is important to know about water pollution? 11. Can you give any examples of the result of people's disastrous activity? What is done in the world to save our planet from ecological disaster?

Reading

Pre-Reading Activities

1) Answer the following questions.

1. What do you know about the way ecological problems affect our health? 2. Who is responsible for ecological problems? 3. The ecologists say that breathing the polluted air in Mexico City or in Cairo causes the same harm as smoking two packs of cigarettes. What diseases can the polluted air cause? 4. Why are aerosols considered to be harmful for environment? What are they most harmful for? 5. In your opinion, what should be done to improve the ecological situation on our planet?

2) Read, translate and memorise the following chains of derivatives. Say what part of speech each of them belongs to.

To pollute – pollutant – pollution; to contaminate – contaminant – contamination; fertile – fertility – to fertilize – fertilizer; to create – creative – creature; to emit – emission; insect – insecticide [in'sektisaɪd]; pest – pesticide; to penetrate – penetration; harm – harmful; disaster – disastrous.

33. a) Read and translate the text.

Environment and Health

People are complex beings who live complex lives. We do not live in isolation from our surroundings, and we must interact with our environment and society. A person's health is affected through numerous different aspects of life. So, what aspects of the environment affect our health?

Our health, especially respiratory organs, is seriously affected by the high amounts of contaminants in the air, water, and soil. A large number of people have conditions such as asthma, other respiratory problems or difficulties with other organs of the body. The contaminants in the air have not only affected humans, but animals as well. The atmosphere contains a lot of dust, as strong winds pick it up from the surface of the Earth. As a result of volcano eruptions, forest fires, industrial wastes, etc; air becomes polluted with products not completely burned. There are some basic sources of pollution of the atmosphere: industries, transportation devices, and others.

However, industrial production and its waste products are the strongest pollutant of the air. Their sources of pollution are thermal power stations, which together with smoke throw out sulphurous and carbonic gas in the air. The metallurgical plants, especially nonferrous metallurgies, fill the air with nitrogen compounds, chlorine, fluorine, ammonia, compounds of phosphorus, particles and compounds of mercury and arsenic, chemical and cement works, etc. Harmful gases get into the air as a result of the burning of fuel for the needs of the industry, heating of our homes, transportation needs and processing of household and industrial wastes. Aerosols are solid or liquid particles, which contaminate the air. Solid components of aerosols, in some cases, are especially dangerous to living creatures, because they are linked to the cause of specific diseases. In the atmosphere, aerosol pollution is perceived as smoke, fog, haze or fumes.

The manufacture of cement and other building materials is a source of dust pollution in the atmosphere. For these reasons, many people get ill and do not know the cause of their condition. Industrial enterprises emit tons of harmful substances that have disastrous consequences for our planet. They are the main reason for the greenhouse effect and acid rains. Nuclear power stations are even a greater environmental threat. We all know how tragic the consequences of the Chernobyl disaster are for health.

The soil is a natural formation that holds a number of qualities necessary for a living creature. One of the most important qualities of the soil is its fertility. As human beings, we don't fully appreciate the value and the great importance of soil free of contaminants. Frequently, we find the remainders of construction sites containing harmful chemicals; automobile parts often are cast out and leak fluids

onto the soil. As a result, iron and other metals pollute the soil. Thus, dangerous compounds of arsenic, mercury, and copper penetrate into the soil. We can observe this especially on the sides of our roads and highways.

Even mineral fertilizers, created to enhance the soil, can cause damage. For many years, different kinds of fertilizers and chemicals were used in agriculture to obtain the best crops; soil, much like every living creature needs vitamins and nutrients. These nutrients are found in healthy soil, and it helps to grow and protect the plants from insects, bugs, and weed killers. The excess amount of pesticides used to "fertilize" and protect the soil turned out to be the ones that harmed the soil the most. But, it didn't just damage the soil. It also made a negative impact on humans, animals, birds, and fish. The use of insecticides, especially those containing DDT¹, may result in upsetting the balance of nature.

The poisoning of the world's water supplies is the fastest-spreading disease of civilisation. The seas are in danger. They are filled with poison: industrial and nuclear waste, chemical fertilisers and pesticides. The Mediterranean is already nearly dead; the North Sea is following. The Aral Sea is on the brink of extinction. If nothing is done about it, one day nothing will be able to live in the seas. We know that many industrial enterprises are dumping wastes into rivers and lakes. The excessive construction of dams, for example, causes the silting of rivers and the accumulating of nitrates at a faster rate than the surrounding soil can absorb. In many parts of the world rivers run brown, because they are filled with earth washed from the fields bordering them. If it goes on like that we'll soon feel lack of fresh water even in the places where there are many rivers and freshwater lakes. We all know that human organism contains about 80 per cent of water, thus drinking contaminated water may affect our health in quite an unexpected way.

People are beginning to realise that environmental problems are not somebody else's. They join and support various international organisations and green parties. If governments wake up to what is

¹ dichlorodiphenyltrichloroethane; a colourless odourless substance used as an insecticide. It is toxic to animals and is known to accumulate in the tissues. It is now banned in most countries.

happening – perhaps we'll be able to avoid the disaster that threatens the natural world and all of us with it.

b) Learn the following words and word-combinations from the text.

Being – істота; to interact – взаємодіяти; environment – довкілля; respiratory – дихальний; volcano eruption – виверження вулкана; wastes – відходи; thermal power station – теплова електростанція; sulphurous [ˈsʌlfərəs] – сірчаний; carbonic – вуглецевий; fluorine – фтор; mercury – ртуть; arsenic – миш'як; solid – твердий; haze – легкий туман; fume – дим, випаровування; to emit – викидати, виділяти; disastrous consequences – катастрофічні наслідки; nuclear power station – атомна електростанція; to enhance – збільшувати, підсилювати; weed killer – гербіцид (засіб для боротьби з бур'янами); pesticide – пестицид (засіб для боротьби зі шкідниками); on the brink of extinction – на межі вимирання; silting – замулювання.

34. Find in the text words similar in meaning to the following.

1) contaminant; 2) smoke; 3) a haze; 4) surroundings; 5) herbicide; 6) catastrophic; 7) earth; 8) bad; 9) motorway; 10) to understand.

35. Find in the text the English equivalents for the following Ukrainian phrases.

1) прісна вода; 2) хімічні добрива; 3) шкідливі хімікати; 4) загроза довкіллю; 5) несподіваний спосіб; 6) підтримувати міжнародні організації та партії зелених; 7) хвороба цивілізації; 8) жива істота; 9) накопичення нітратів; 10) залишки будівництва.

36. Find in the text sentences with the following expressions and read them aloud. Translate them into Ukrainian and let your classmates translate them back into English without a textbook.

1) The excessive construction of dams; 2) as a result of the burning of fuel for the needs of the industry; 3) we'll soon feel lack of fresh water; 4) high amounts of contaminants in the air; 5) automobile parts often are cast out; 6) every living creature needs vitamins and nutrients; 7) upsetting the balance of nature; 8) used in agriculture to

obtain the best crops; 9) that human organism contains about 80 per cent of water; 10) it helps to grow and protect the plants.

Speaking

37. a) Read and translate the text in the Information File.

Information File

The Pacific Garbage Patch is an area of the Pacific Ocean where rubbish has collected. It was discovered in 1997, and is essentially plastic garbage and bits of rubbish that have been thrown away on land and have ended up in the sea. We don't actually know the size of the garbage patch, but some people say it could be 600,000 square miles across – which is twice the size of France.

Now plastic pollution in the seas kills over a million sea birds and 100,000 mammals and turtles each year. There are apparently 46,000 pieces of plastic, on average, in each square kilometre of the ocean. Part of the problem is that most plastics aren't biodegradable. Some plastic bags could last in the environment for up to a thousand years. 100 million tons of plastic products are made every year, 40% of those are packaging materials that are mainly used once and then discarded.

Recycling is the process of turning discarded products into a new product; this is done to conserve on the consumption of resources, energy and space. Today the most common products in cities recycling programs are paper products, cardboard, plastic, glass and aluminum. Glass takes up to 4000 years to decompose in a landfill yet can be recycled indefinitely. For every 1 ton of plastic that is recycled we save the equivalent of 2 people's energy use for 1 year, the amount of water used by 1 person in 2 month's time and almost 2000 pounds of oil. Approximately 60% of our rubbish thrown away today could be recycled.

b) Answer the following questions:

1. Why is plastic pollution so dangerous? Is it a global problem? 2. What does the word *biodegradable* mean? What products are considered biodegradable? Why? 3. What territories are the most polluted by plastics? Why? 4. How does plastic pollution affect the environment in our country? 5. What is done by the Ukrainian government to reduce plastic pollution? What else should be done to avoid plastic pollution? 6. What are the tendencies in the problem of plastic pollution reduction in the US and European countries?

38. a) *Discuss the following issues using the questions below as prompts. Give reasons to your answers.*

1) Environmental Protection

1. Do you worry about the environment? What do you know about the history of how our environment came to be under threat? 2. What are the biggest problems facing our environment? 3. What danger does our country pose to the global environment? Why? 4. Do you think the American and European governments care more about its economy or the environment? Which countries are leaders in caring about the environment? 5. What do you think of environmental groups like Greenpeace? Would you give money to or actively campaign for environmental causes? 6. What is the quality of the environment in our country? What kind of environmental policies does our country have/need? 7. How important is the natural environment to you in your daily life? Are you environmentally friendly? 8. Do you think our environment is beyond repair? If the environment could speak, what would it tell us? 9. What do you think our grandkids will think of the way we treated the environment? 10. Do you think international meetings on the environment are useful?

2) Pollution

1. What comes to mind when you hear the word 'pollution'? What do you get most angry about when you think about pollution? 2. What different forms of pollution do you know of? What do you know about air, marine and river pollution? 3. Is there a lot of pollution in your country? How bad is pollution in your town? 4. What do people do every day that adds to pollution? Do you think pollution will be a bigger issue in fifty years than it is now? 5. What can we do every day that helps to reduce pollution? What simple, everyday thing could help reduce pollution most? 6. How does pollution affect our health? What harm does pollution do to the environment? 7. Do you think international meetings and things like the Kyoto Protocol help reduce pollution? 8. Which bothers you more, noise pollution from traffic or environmental pollution from traffic? 9. What are the worst pollutants and who are the worst polluters? What do you think about noise pollution? 10. The famous marine biologist Jacques Cousteau said: "Water and air...have become global garbage cans." What do you think of his words?

(after: www.eslDiscussions.com)

b) Write an essay on one of the discussed topics.*

39. Read the following statements. Do you agree or disagree with them? Motivate your choice. Think of possible solutions of the problems discussed.

1. I think that nuclear tests can help technical progress. I think that nuclear tests should be banned. 2. Our weather is going crazy. Ecological disaster on the planet is the main reason of that. 3. I think one of the environmental problems affecting the world is a shortage of food. People in some countries suffer from hunger. There is no chance this problem could be solved. 4. Tornadoes, floods and earthquakes happen more rarely nowadays than they used to in the past. 5. Man needs protection and care as much as animals do. Otherwise Modern Man wouldn't survive. 6. I think cars ruin the countryside and the wildlife. It's better to go on foot and to give up using them. 7. I think, most of the pollution in big cities comes from cars. They also make a lot of noise. 8. There are about 7 billion people on our planet and the population is still growing. Newly born people need more and more food, goods, land and modern conveniences.

Extended Reading

(1) SAD

No one is immune to bouts of melancholy and as the nights get longer and the hours of daylight diminish, many people find themselves in a winter of gloom and doom.

Around two million people in the United Kingdom suffer from Seasonal Affective Disorder (SAD), but the good news is that shaking off those dark moods is not as hard as it seems.

Everyone feels moody from time to time, but for many of us in Britain, the darkening skies of winter can cast a depressing shadow. Whether caused by anxiety, fear or anger, persistent moodiness can affect work, relationships, friendships, appearance and even health. By allowing our minds to be flooded with negative emotions, we are endangering our physical health as well as our emotional well-being.

But as anyone who has tried to 'just snap out of it' will testify, mood control is not a simple feat. A slight tinge of the blues can soon develop into a full-blown bout of depression.

In ancient times, Greek and Roman doctors pinpointed a link between dark moods, lethargy and the change of seasons. More recently, researchers and psychiatrists worldwide have identified the medical condition to account

for seasonal mood swings - namely, Seasonal Affective Disorder, or SAD - which is today recognized a distinct kind of clinical depression.

Beating the blues

If you are experiencing moodiness, fatigue, excessive sleep or mental cloudiness, there are ways to brighten your life:

- Lighten up. Try to expose yourself to as much natural light as possible. Enjoy time outside in whiter sunshine, or take holidays in winter and go to sunny destinations. Even installing brighter light bulbs and painting walls in lighter colours can help.
- Fight off bad moods with good food. Carbohydrates, in moderation, can help to lift your spirits. Foods such as breakfast cereal, pasta or potatoes are rich in carbohydrates, but try to avoid mixing them with protein-rich foods, like meat or cheese, which impede their effect.
- Analyze your moods. Whenever you feel down, stop and work out where your negative thoughts are coming from. Many of us are prone to distort situations and over-react unreasonably. Try to withdraw and look at what it is that's worrying or angering you in a rational way. And don't feel guilty about feeling down - work out why you do instead. Gradually, you should be able to learn to control your thoughts and moods more beneficially.
- Seek professional advice. If you feel severely depressed this winter, talk to your GP. What seems like SAD may instead be different type of clinical depression, an imbalance in the body's chemistry or other medical problems.

(2) Fad Diets

It is a well-known fact nowadays that healthy eating is an absolute "must" in order to keep our bodies full of nutrition so we are bursting with life and energy. Celebs are forever pictured with enormous bottles of water by their sides. Every single magazine has a recipe for a big healthy salad and low fat dressing. However, the message that seems to be confused here is if you want to be healthy you are not allowed to eat very much at all. For a start that is a load of cobblers because as long as you are exercising regularly you can eat a damn well feast if it's healthy food. But, as usual, it is the famous people that are causing all of the hype with the well-known "*Fad Dieting*".

Fad Diets are restrictive diets – diets that focus on one food or a group of foods. The problem with these diets is that they are simply not healthy. By just eating one sort of food type you would be starving your body of everything else that is essential in our diets for our body to keep on working properly. These so-called miracle diets that celebs swear by are often successful due to the harsh and obsessive exercise routines that they endure, rather than the diets themselves.

Fad Diets, as well as being an unhealthy way of eating, can also trigger more serious problems, such as anorexia and bulimia. Approximately 1.15 million people in the United Kingdom are affected by serious and sometimes

life-threatening eating disorders. 90% of those people being young adult women, or teenagers. The main reason why women and teenagers are more vulnerable to eating disorders is their tendency to go on strict diets to achieve the "ideal" figure that we see in the media. However, a lot more men are also being diagnosed with eating disorders, due to the modern idea that everyone should have a model figure.

So, why do we turn to fad diets? That's the one question we need to ask ourselves, as it is pretty likely that at some point we have felt unhappy with ourselves and have thought about dieting. Most of us would immediately think of the answer that we turn to fad diets because we want to be slimmer – a pretty obvious answer. However, why do we feel the need to be slimmer? I personally, and I know many other people would say it is because we are constantly reminded of how wonderful certain celebrities look, and what their secrets are for achieving their "perfect" body. Every magazine is full of tips on how to look like *Geri Halliwell* and *Jennifer Aniston*, or how *Brad Pitt* works out to get his figure. In an ideal world most of us would like to look like that but the thing is guys and girls not all of us have the build to be that small!

In the 21st century, shouldn't we be more concerned with how healthy our bodies are on the inside? Especially now we all know how important it is to stay healthy and what we have to do to live a long and energetic life. We need *energy* for this modern lifestyle, we need a well balanced diet to keep our bodies happy and most of all we need regular exercise to keep ourselves at a fit and healthy state.

So next time you think about going on a fad diet in order to turn yourself into the next supermodel, – STOP! Think of what your body needs on the inside rather than what you feel you should look like on the outside. I guarantee that you will have a much happier and healthier life!

(based on: <http://www.pupiline.net>)

(3)The Ecological Crisis: A Myth or Reality

At the present time the Earth accommodates more than 5 billion people, half of which are undernourished. A total of 4 million deaths occur each year from starvation. Mankind has finally realised the threat of an increasing population and has faced the fact that something must be done. The food-supply increase lags considerably behind the immense growth of population. Besides, conditions for life grow steadily worse due to numerous facets of environmental pollution. And worst of all, today's man constantly contributes to his own deadly crisis. We have got too many cars, too many factories, too much sewage and carbon dioxide, too little water and food deficiency. That is why many western scientists say that our world is going through an ecological crisis which will mean the gradual destruction of the human race. Our scientists are not that pessimistic, although they do think that man's increased

tampering with the world around him is posing a growing threat to the biosphere. It is not too late to forestall what could be drastic and irreversible changes in the environment and ensure that the world will be a healthy place for the present and future generations to live in.

The poisoning of the world's land, air, and water is the fastest-spreading disease of civilisation. It probably produces fewer damages than wars, earthquakes and floods, but it is potentially one of history's greatest dangers to human life on earth. If present trends continue for the next several decades, our planet will become uninhabitable.

Overpopulation, pollution and energy consumption have created such planet-wide problems as massive deforestation, ozone depletion, acid rains and the global warming that is believed to be caused by the greenhouse effect.

The seas are in danger. They are filled with poison: industrial and nuclear waste, chemical fertilisers and pesticides. The Mediterranean is already nearly dead; the North Sea is following. The Aral Sea is on the brink of extinction. If nothing is done about it, one day nothing will be able to live in the seas.

Every ten minutes one kind of animal, plant or insect dies out for ever. If nothing is done about it, one million species that are alive today will have become extinct twenty years from now.

Air pollution is a very serious problem. In Cairo just breathing the air is life threatening- equivalent to smoking two packs of cigarettes a day. The same holds true for Mexico City and 600 cities of the former Soviet Union.

Industrial enterprises emit tons of harmful substances. These emissions have disastrous consequences for our planet. They are the main reason for the greenhouse effect and acid rains. But nuclear power stations are even greater environmental threat. We all know how tragic the consequences of the Chernobyl disaster are.

People are beginning to realise that environmental problems are not somebody else's. They join and support various international organisation and green parties. If governments wake up to what is happening- perhaps we'll be able to avoid the disaster that threatens the natural world and all of us with it.

We all love our native land, beautiful nature with its blue lakes and of rivers, thick forests, with its animal and plant kingdom. We are children of nature and we must be very careful in usage of natural resources.

People have lived on our planet for many years. They lived and live on different continents, in different countries. People depend on their planet, on the sun, on animals and plants around them. People must take care of Earth. Our ecology becomes worse and worse with every new day. People destruct wildlife, cut down trees to make furniture. They forget that people can't leave without trees and plants, because they fill air with oxygen. And, of course, great problems are population and animals' destruction. The main reason of

pollution is rubbish. Most our rubbish go to big holes in the ground, called 'dumps'. But dumps are very dangerous for our life because they are full of rats, which can carry infections away from dumps. Another way to get rid of rubbish is to burn it. But the fires make poisons, which go into the air and pollute it. And the seas are in danger too. They are filled with poison: industrial and nuclear waste. The Mediterranean is already nearly died: the North Sea is following. If nothing is done about it one day nothing will be able to live in seas. Every ten minutes one kind of animal or plant dies out forever.

Of course, people can't stay indifferent to these problems. There a lot of special organizations, which try to save our nature. One of them is Greenpeace. Greenpeace began its work 20 years ago from saving whales. And now Greenpeace is a world-famous organization, which saves plants, animals and people. These organization, want to rescue animals, to help them to survive and to save jungle rain forests, which are in danger of destruction. And they also help animals because many of them have already gone as they have nowhere to live. Their homes, the trees, have disappeared. We must save wild animals. And we must find the right way to save land, people and animals. We must lake care of nature, because we are part of it.

People are beginning to realize that environmental problems are not somebody else's. They join and support various international organizations and green parties. If governments wake up to what is happening – perhaps we'll be able to avoid the disaster that threatens the natural world and all of us with it.

Sample Vocabulary Test to Module 4

Task 1. Choose the correct answer:

1. An allergic reaction which makes your skin go red is called:
a) rash; b) bruise; c) boil
2. to be inoculated means
a) to be sick; b) to have preventive injections of vaccines; c) to be X-rayed
3. The state of poor health is called
a) poverty; b) illness; c) ointment
4. Doctor's written instructions containing the list of medicines and the way they should be taken are called
a) a receipt; b) a subscription; c) a prescription
5. Pilates is:
a) a cosmetic procedure; b) type of fitness; c) a disease
6. The word *shot* is translated into Ukrainian as
a) постріл; b) гарячка; c) ін'єкція

7. Call in one word: a medical examination, taken at regular intervals to verify a normal state of health or discover a disease in its early stages
a) a check-out; b) a check-up; c) a cheque
8. The word *chubby* is translated into Ukrainian as
a) чубатий; b) круглолиций; c) товстий
9. A doctor who practices general medicine is called
a) a physician.; b) a physicist; c) a psychiatrist
10. The word combination *belly dance* is translated into Ukrainian as
a) білий танець; b) танець живота; c) гарний танець

Task 2. Translate into English:

- | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 11. серцевий ритм; | 16. медична довідка; |
| 12. набувати імунітет; | 17. дієтичний продукт; |
| 13. дотримуватися дієти; | 18. проходити медогляд; |
| 14. лист непрацездатності; | 19. здавати аналіз крові; |
| 15. швидка медична допомога; | 20. ультразвукове обстеження. |

Module 5

Unit 5.1. Travelling. Public Conveyances.

Vocabulary: Travelling Introductory Reading

A.

1. Read the text and find out the meaning of the target words (in bold type).

Thousands of people **travel** (move from place to place) every day either on business or for pleasure. To understand how true it is you've got to go to a **railway station**, a **sea** or a **river port** or an **airport**. There you are most likely to see hundreds of people hurrying to **board a train**, a **ship** or a **plane**. Thus one can choose to travel **by air**, **by rail/by train**, **by sea** or **by road/by car**.

If you need to get any place of the world in a short time, you should choose plane. Travelling by air is the fastest and the most convenient way of travelling. Most people prefer travelling by train, as it is cheaper. Travelling by train is slower than by plane, but you can see much more interesting places of the country you are travelling through. Modern trains have very comfortable **seats** (a sitting place for a passenger in a vehicle), which make even the longest **journey** (going from one particular place to another) enjoyable – from **departure** to **arrival** to your **destination**. **Speed**, comfort and safety are the main advantages of trains and planes. That is why many people prefer them to all other **means of transportation**.

To be on the safe side and to spare yourself the trouble of standing long hours **in the queue/ (US line)** you'd better **book tickets in advance**. All you have to do is to ring up the airport or the railway station **booking office** and they will **reserve** a ticket for you. You can book either a **one-way/single ticket**, or a **return/round trip** ticket. The return ticket is usually cheaper than two single tickets, besides, it is more convenient to have your ticket already booked to be sure you will definitely be able to get back, when you feel like returning home. There are also **reduced fare tickets** for elderly or disabled people. Children under 6 travel free if accompanied by an adult who pays a **fare**. 6-11 year old children pay **child fare** (there are **child's tickets**), which is usually half less than **adult fare**. When you travel for a short

distance on a regular route, you can buy your ticket in a **ticket machine/ticket vending machine (TVM)**. **Weekly** and **monthly passes** are good for unlimited rides on regular daily routes.

Everyone knows that the speed of **sea liners** is much slower than that of planes, but on board of ship there are all civilised comforts: you can stretch your legs on the spacious **decks**, play games, swim, meet interesting people and enjoy good food. A sea **voyage** (a long journey, typically by sea or in space) is very enjoyable indeed, if the sea is calm – otherwise you may feel **seasick** (suffering from sickness or nausea caused by the motion of a ship at sea) and no other means of transportation could be worse. Even if the weather is ideal, sea journeys take a long time. It is nice to go on sea **cruises** (a voyage on a ship or boat taken for pleasure calling in at certain ports) when you are on vacation and can sacrifice your time for the pleasure of travelling by ship.

Many people prefer travelling by car. You don't have to buy a ticket, you can stop wherever you wish, where there is something interesting to see. And for this reason travelling by car is popular for pleasure **trips** (the whole visit: the journey to a certain place and back and the time of staying there) while people usually take a train or a plane when they are travelling **on business**.

B*. Travelling by Sea

(sea/river) port	порт
ship-yard	верф
harbour	гавань
quay ['ki:]	причал
ship/vessel	судно
freighter/cargo-ship	вантажне судно
tanker	танкер
hovercraft	судно на повітряній подушці
ferry	пором
motor-boat	катер
yacht	яхта
river steamer	річковий пароплав
anchor	якір
storm/(sea)gale	шторм/буря
shipwreck	катастрофа судна
lifeboat	рятувальна шлюпка
lifebelt	пояс

gangway	трап
dock	причал
captain's bridge	капітанський місток
steerage	закрита палуба
lounge	салон
mate	штурман, помічник капітана
lighthouse	маяк

Luggage

hand luggage	ручний багаж
left-luggage office	камера зберігання
luggage receipt	багажна квитанція
to deposit/to collect one's luggage	здати/забрати багаж з камери зберігання
to have one's luggage labeled	прикріпити на багаж ярлик
Lost and Found	Бюро знахідок
luggage claim check	багажна бирка

Mind!

1. **Travel** (v) – general meaning of moving from place to place. **Journey** (n) – going from one particular place to another. It may be long or short. *e.g.: The journey from New York to Los Angeles took several days.* **Trip** – is used when you talk about the whole visit – the journey there and back, the place you stayed and so on. **Cruise** – a voyage on a ship or boat taken for pleasure or as a holiday and usually following a predetermined course, usually calling in at several ports: *e.g. They were cruising off the California coast.* **Stopover** is when you are flying to one place but have a short break in your journey in another place. *e.g.: He flew from London to Singapore with a stopover in Moscow.*

2. Traditionally sailors use different words at sea – a bedroom is a **cabin**, a bed is a **bunk**, the kitchen on a ship is a **galley**, right is **starboard** and left is **port** and the group of people who work on the ship is called the **crew**. These terms are also now used in the context of an aircraft.

3. People refer to transportation means like ships, yachts, cars, planes, etc. as “she” rather than “it”.

2. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian. Mind the use of the italicized words.

1. Trains always *run* on time here. 2. You have to *change trains* at Crewe. 3. We are sailing on the *Queen Elizabeth II*. It *sets sail* at noon. It will *dock* in New York at 6 p.m. and we shall *disembark* as soon as we can. 4. The ship was *wrecked*. The passengers were

marooned on a desert island. 5. Our car *does* 10 km *to the litre*. It goes quite fast. We can usually *overtake* other cars. 6. The car *swerved* into the middle of the road to avoid the cyclist. 7. He *backed* the car into the drive and *parked* in front of the house.

3. Match the words and their explanations.

1.	trip	a)	a room where passengers can await departure
2.	destination	b)	a long journey, typically by sea or in space
3.	to travel	c)	the action or process of arriving
4.	deck	d)	the place to which someone or something is going or being sent
5.	departure lounge	e)	leaving, typically to start a journey
6.	sea liner	f)	suffering from sickness or nausea caused by the motion of a ship at sea
7.	journey	g)	to move from place to place
8.	departure	h)	the money a passenger on public transportation has to pay
9.	fare	i)	a voyage on a ship or boat taken for pleasure calling in at certain ports
10.	voyage	j)	a vending machine that produces tickets
11.	seasick	k)	going from one particular place to another
12.	arrival	l)	a sitting place for a passenger in a vehicle
13.	cruise	m)	the whole visit: the journey to a certain place and back and the time of staying there
14.	seat	n)	a horizontal structure, extending across a ship or boat at any of various levels and open to the weather
15.	ticket machine	o)	a large luxurious passenger ship used on a regular line

4. Fill in the chart.

to go on business	to go somewhere to work not for pleasure	їхати у відрядження
monthly pass	a ticket for unlimited rides, valid during a month	
	a ticket for a certain category of passengers, like disabled or elderly people	пільговий квиток
means of transportation		транспортний засіб
	just in case	про всяк випадок
single/(US) one-way ticket	a ticket entitling a passenger to travel only to his destination, without returning	
cruise		круїз
	a line or sequence of people or vehicles awaiting their turn to be attended to or to proceed	черга
to book tickets in advance		бронювати квитки заздалегідь
	get on or into a ship, aircraft, or other vehicle	здійснити посадку

Reading

Pre-Reading Activities

Answer the following questions:

1) Are you fond of travelling? Why (not)? 2) Can you sacrifice all civilised comforts to travelling to new places? To what extend? 3) What do you like more: to sit on a couch and watch the National Geographic Channel on TV or to go and it all in your own eyes? Motivate your point of view. 4) Have you ever travelled to some exotic countries? Would you like to? 5) They say, it is useful to travel for one's own personal development. Do you agree? Give your reasons.

5. a) *Read and translate the article. Consult the dictionary, if necessary.*

Why We Travel

We travel, initially, to lose ourselves; and we travel, next, to find ourselves. We travel to open our hearts and eyes and learn more about the world than our newspapers will accommodate. And we travel, to become young fools again – to slow time down and get taken in, and fall in love once more. The beauty of this whole process was described, perhaps, before people even took to frequent flying. We "need sometimes," as the Harvard philosopher George Santayana wrote, "to escape into open solitudes, into aimlessness, into the moral holiday of running some pure hazard, in order to sharpen the edge of life, to taste hardship, and to be compelled to work desperately for a moment at no matter what".

I know that I travel in large part in search of hardship – both my own, which I want to feel, and others', which I need to see. Travel in that sense guides us toward a better balance of wisdom and compassion – of seeing the world clearly, and yet feeling it truly. For seeing without feeling can obviously be uncaring; while feeling without seeing can be blind. Yet for me the first great joy of traveling is simply the luxury of leaving all my beliefs and certainties at home, and seeing everything I thought I knew in a different light, and from a crooked angle.

If a Mongolian restaurant seems exotic to us in America, it only follows that a McDonald's would seem equally exotic in Ulan Bator – or, at least, equally far from everything expected. It's fashionable nowadays to draw a distinction between the "tourist" and the "traveller". A tourist is just someone who complains, "Nothing here is the way it is at home," while a traveller is one who grumbles, "Everything here is the same as it is in Cairo – or Cuzco or Kathmandu." But for the rest of us, the freedom of

travelling comes from the fact that it whirls you around and turns you upside down, and stands everything you took for granted on its head. And the first lesson we learn on the road is how provincial are the things we imagine to be universal.

By now all of us have heard the old saying about how the real voyage of discovery consists not in seeing new places but in seeing with new eyes. Yet one of the subtler beauties of travel is that it enables you to bring new eyes to the people you encounter. Thus even as holidays help you appreciate your own home more – by seeing it through a distant admirer's eyes – they help you bring newly appreciative distant eyes to the places you visit. This, I think, is how tourism, which so obviously destroys cultures, can also resuscitate or revive them. If the first thing we can bring is a real sense of what contemporary world is like, the second thing is a fresh and renewed sense of how special are the warmth and beauty of their country for those who can compare it with other places around the globe.

Thus travel spins us round in two ways at once: It shows us the sights and values that we might ordinarily ignore; but it also, and more deeply, shows us all the parts of ourselves that might otherwise grow rusty. For in travelling to a truly foreign place, we inevitably travel to moods and states of mind and hidden inward passages that we would seldom visit.

We travel in search of both self and anonymity. Abroad, we are wonderfully free of caste and job and standing; and people cannot put a name or tag to us. And precisely because we are freed of inessential labels, we have the opportunity to come into contact with more essential parts of ourselves. Abroad is the place where we stay up late, follow impulse and find ourselves as wide open as when we are in love. As Oliver Cromwell once noted, "A man never goes so far as when he doesn't know where he is going."

There are, of course, great dangers to this, as to every kind of freedom, but the great promise of it is that, travelling, we are born again, and return at moments to a younger and a more open kind of self. For if every true love affair can feel like a journey to a foreign country, where you can't quite speak the language, and you don't know where you're going, every trip to a foreign country can be a love affair.

At the same time, travel itself is changing as the world does. It's not enough to go to the ends of the earth these days – now anyone with

a Visa card can do that. Even those who don't move around the world find the world moving more and more around them. Walk just six blocks, in Queens or Berkeley, and you're travelling through several cultures in as many minutes; get into a cab outside the White House, and you're often in a piece of Addis Ababa. And technology, too, compounds this sense of availability, so that many people feel they can travel around the world without leaving the room – through cyberspace or CD-ROMs, videos and virtual travel.

So travel, at heart, is just a quick way to keeping our minds mobile and awake. As Santayana with whom I began, wrote, "There is wisdom in turning as often as possible from the familiar to the unfamiliar; it keeps the mind nimble; it kills prejudice, and it fosters humour." Romantic poets started an era of travel because they were the great apostles of open eyes. And if travel is like love, it is, in the end, mostly because it's a heightened state of awareness, in which we are mindful, receptive, undimmed by familiarity and ready to be transformed. That is why the best trips, like the best love affairs, never really end.

(after Pico Iyer)

b) Learn the following words.

Solitude – самотність; hazard – ризик, небезпека; edge – гострота, різкість, край; hardship – трудність; wisdom – мудрість; compassion – жалість, співчуття; uncaring – неухажливий, неспівчутливий; luxury – розкіш; crooked – викривлений; to grumble – бурчати, скаржитися; to whirl – мчати, вертітися, кружляти; to take for granted – приймати як щось звичне, зрозуміле; subtle – тонкий, невловимий, ледь помітний; to encounter – несподівано зустрічати; appreciative – вдячний, той, що вміє цінувати; to resuscitate – оживляти, воскрешати; to revive – відроджувати, відновлювати; to spin – обертатися; rusty – іржавий; inward – внутрішній, душевний, ментальний; caste – каста; inessential – несуттєвий; nimble – моторний, спритний, кмітливий; prejudice – упередження, забобон; to foster – заохочувати, сприяти, пестити; mindful – уважливий, дбайливий; receptive – сприйнятливий; undimmed – виразний, ясний, чіткий.

c) Give a literary translation of the passage in italics (in writing);

d) State the main idea of the article.

6. Find in the text words similar in meaning to the following:

1) risk, danger; 2) loneliness; 3) difficulty; 4) sympathy; 5) to complain; 6) to meet unexpectedly; 7) delicate, ingeniously and elaborately organised; 8) sharp, quick-witted; 9) grateful; 10) to encourage.

7. Find in the text the English equivalents for the following Ukrainian words and phrases.

1) очима далекого прихильника; 4) приховані душевні пориви; 5) кращий баланс мудрості й співчуття; 6) знову стати молодими дурниками; 7) свіжі, нові відчуття; 8) перевертати з ніг на голову; 9) нести нові погляди людям, з якими ти зустрічаєшся; 10) залишити всі вірування і переконання вдома.

8. Find in the text the sentences with the following expressions and read them aloud. Translate them into Ukrainian and let your classmates translate them back into English without a textbook.

1) the freedom of travelling comes from the fact that; 2) to lose ourselves; 3) feeling without seeing can be blind; 4) the sights and values that we might ordinarily ignore; 5) travelling, we are born again; 6) it's a heightened state of awareness; 7) the real voyage of discovery; 8) so obviously destroys cultures; 9) videos and virtual travel; 10) keeping our minds mobile and awake.

9. Complete the sentences the way the author puts it in the text.

1. That is why the best trips ...
2. Even those who don't move around the world, ...
3. It shows us the sights and values ...
4. If a Mongolian restaurant seems exotic to us in America ...
5. We travel to open our hearts and eyes ...
6. Yet one of the subtler beauties of travel is ...
7. For in travelling to a truly foreign place ...
8. And if travel is like love ...
9. It's not enough to go to the ends of the earth ...
10. Abroad, we are wonderfully free ...

Speaking

10. The results of the survey “Why are people motivated to travel?” showed the following 10 reasons:

- 1) romance;
- 2) relaxation;
- 3) family/friends;
- 4) religion;
- 5) death;
- 6) honeymoon;
- 7) education;
- 8) celebration;
- 9) medical/health;
- 10) work/job requirement.

Can you think of any other possible reasons that may cause people to travel? Make up your own list of such reasons. Motivate your best choice as in the Model below:

Model:

I was never interested in travel until my girlfriend went to school in Italy and I went to visit. The second I got to Florence my jaw dropped at what I was seeing. It's crazy to step out of your environment and except other cultures. The best day I had was when she went to class and I got up early and went for a walk. I got a sandwich and sat on a bridge and just watched everything. There everyday way of life is so different and just mesmerizing. It was as simple as that for me. I seen Ireland, Iraq, Afghanistan, Canada, Switzerland, Colorado and I'm moving to California this summer. I say live it up. There's a huge world and only little time to see it.

11*. Comment on the following proverbs and sayings:

- The careful foot can walk anywhere.
- A traveller without observation is a bird without wings.
- He that travels far knows much.
- Travel broadens the mind, and raises the spirits.
- Travel light – preconception and prejudice are unnecessary luggage.
- Love to travel, but do not make the road your home.
- The best journeys are not always in straight lines.

- Life is a journey where the destination is unknown.
- Good company on the road is the shortest cut.
- On a long journey even a straw weighs heavy.

* * *

- If you lose your way it is better to ask and feel a fool for five minutes than not ask and remain a fool for the rest of your life.
- Every time you get frustrated and feel that you're not going anywhere, consider this globe called earth that we are all riding on.
- A tree trunk the size of a man grows from a blade as thin as a hair. A tower nine stories high is built from a small heap of earth. A journey a thousand miles starts in front of your feet.
- To be sure that your friend is a friend, you must go with him on a journey, travel with him day and night, go with him near and far.
- No matter where you go, there you are.

12. Read and translate the following quotations. Comment on them.*

A journey of a thousand miles must begin with a single step. – *Lao Tzu.*

For my part, I travel not to go anywhere, but to go. I travel for travel's sake. The great affair is to move. – *Robert Louis Stevenson.*

In America, there are two classes of travel: First class, and with children. – *Robert Benchley.*

Most of my treasured memories of travel are recollections of sitting. – *Robert Thomas Allen.*

Being in a ship is being in a jail, with the chance of being drowned. – *Samuel Johnson.*

When preparing to travel, lay out all your clothes and all your money. Then take half the clothes and twice the money. – *Susan Heller.*

If you reject the food, ignore the customs, fear the religion and avoid the people, you might better stay at home. – *James Michener.*

No one realizes how beautiful it is to travel until he comes home and rests his head on his old, familiar pillow. – *Lin Yutang.*

I love to travel, but hate to arrive." – *Albert Einstein.*

A journey of a thousand miles begins with a single step. – *Confucius*.

Half the fun of the travel is the aesthetics of lostness. – *Ray Bradbury*.

A wise traveller never despises his own country. – *Carlo Goldoni*.

Remember what Bilbo used to say: It's a dangerous business, Frodo, going out your door. You step onto the road, and if you don't keep your feet, there's no knowing where you might be swept off to. – *J.R. Tolkien*.

A man travels the world over in search of what he needs and returns home to find it. – *George Moore*.

The traveller sees what he sees, the tourist sees what he has come to see. – *G.K. Chesterton*.

13. Discussion tips.

1. What place in the world do you dream to visit at least once in your life? Explain your choice.

2. Do you agree that travelling broadens one's mind? What new impressions can the traveller acquire from his/her trips abroad?

3. Compare the tourist and the traveller. Whose motivation is stronger, in your opinion? Why? Is it the traveller, who is more conscious of what to do, where to go and what to see in the foreign country or is it a tourist? Who is looking for more comforts in a trip – a tourist or a traveller? Motivate your answer.

4. Do you agree that travelling sometimes makes one feel younger, free from any prejudice and it is the best way to rest? Why (not)?

5. Why do people still choose to travel themselves, while they can do it virtually due to modern technologies? What makes them do it? Would you exchange the hardships and hazards of real trips for virtual travel through cyberspace and CD-ROMs? Explain your choice.

Writing

14. a) Write an essay on one of the following topics.

1. Travelling is the best way to spend one's holiday.

2. Virtual travel or a real trip – pros and cons.

3. The traveller sees what he wants to see and the tourist sees what someone else wants him to see.

4. The place I dream to visit.
5. He who travels far knows much.

b) Translate the following passage into Ukrainian. Consult the dictionary.*

Transportation of the Future

Maglev¹ Trains. Various segments of the passenger compartments on these high-speed maglev trains can be removed as the train passes through the station. These removable sections can then take passengers to their local destinations while other compartments are lowered in their place. This method allows the main body of the train to remain in motion, thus conserving energy. In addition, the removable multi-functional compartments could be specially equipped to serve most transportation purposes.

Airport. The central dome of this airport of the future would contain air terminals, maintenance facilities, service centers, and hotels. The runways are arranged in a radial configuration, which allows airplanes to easily take off into the prevailing winds and to avoid dangerous crosswind landings. Emergency stations are located at the edge of the runways, which are fully equipped with built-in fire fighting equipment and emergency arresting gear. All of the runways will be equipped with built in sprinkler systems in case of emergency. Passengers will be transported to and from the airport by underground conveyors. Many of the terminals themselves will eventually be constructed underground.

Automobiles. Streamlined cars will provide high-speed, energy efficient, and safe long-range transportation. Some vehicles will have wheels, while others will eventually be equipped with magnetic levitation or air- floatation capabilities. Most vehicles will be equipped with voice-recognition technology that will allow the passengers to program their destination by voice command. Self-monitoring systems will tell the vehicle when service is required, and they will be able to transport themselves to service and maintenance facilities. Use of clean, non-polluting electrical energy allows for silent vehicle operation, while proximity-sensor devices linked to automated velocity and breaking systems enhance safety by enabling the vehicles to avoid

¹ maglev – *from*: magnetic levitation

collisions. As a secondary safety measure, the entire interior will be equipped with ergonomically designed air bag systems. Within the cities, horizontal, vertical, radial, and circular conveyors will serve most transportation needs.

Seacraft. This modular freighter leaving a city in the sea consists of floating, detachable sections that can be rapidly loaded or unloaded. The number of sections can be varied depending on the amount of freight to be delivered. When all of the modules are connected, they can be propelled as a single unit. Then, when the freight arrives at its destination, the selected modules can be disconnected and towed to docks.

Vocabulary: Travelling by Plane

Introductory Reading

15. Read the text and find out the meaning of the target words (in bold type).

No wonder that one of the most popular **means of travelling** is travelling¹ **by plane/by air**. It combines both comfort and **speed** and you will reach your **destination** (the place to which someone or something is going or being sent) very quickly. Many professionals work in civil aviation and try to make your flight safe and comfortable: **air traffic controllers** are responsible for the correct navigation of the airplane, while the **crew: the captain** and **pilots**, and **stewardesses/airplane hostess** take care of you on board a plane. Others work at the **airport** and **air terminal**.

If you decide to travel by air, you should first get the tickets. Now you can book your tickets on the Internet; it is very convenient as you can do it any time right from your home or any other place. You will be given your personal **booking reference** (a sequence comprised of six letters and/or numbers used to uniquely identify your booking) that you will use later at the booking office when collecting your tickets. You can buy **first-class** (the most expensive and luxurious class of accommodation on plane, train, ship, etc.), **second-class**, **third class**, **economy-class** (a low-priced class of travel accommodation on an aircraft) or **business-class** (the class of travel accommodations usually less expensive than the first class, mainly due to cheaper meals) tickets.

You must be in time for your **flight** because before **boarding the plane** you must have time **to pass custom and passport controls**

and **check in** (to arrive and register) at the airport. Passengers are requested to arrive at the airport one hour before **departure** (the action of leaving, typically to start a journey) time on international flights and half an hour on domestic flights. You must register your tickets, weigh in and register the **luggage/(US baggage)**. The economy class luggage **limitation** is 20 kg. First-class passengers are allowed 30 kg. Excess luggage must be paid for. Passengers are permitted to take only some personal belongings with them into the cabin. These items include handbags, brief-cases, umbrellas, coats and souvenirs bought at the **tax-free shops** at the airport. Passengers are usually asked to pass through the **metal detector** (an electronic device that gives an audible or other signal when it is close to metal, used, for example, to detect hidden weapons in the luggage of passengers at the airport). The **security officers** ask them to put all metallic objects and cell phones into the tray, to empty their pockets, to take the laptop out of its case, etc. When the formalities of registering yourself and weighing your baggage are over, you are given a **boarding pass** (pass for boarding an aircraft, given to a passenger when the ticket is issued or upon check-in at the airport) to be shown at the **departure gate** (gate where passengers take on board a ship or aircraft) and again to the stewardess when you get up the **gangway** (a movable platform or staircase by which the aircraft is entered or left) and board the plane.

You can wait for your flight at the **departure lounge** (a room where passengers can await departure). You should remember the numbers of your flight and the gate and follow the announcements, because the flight can sometimes be **delayed** and even **cancelled**.

When **onboard** the plane, before the plane **takes off** (to leave off the ground when beginning the flight in an aircraft) the stewardess gives you all the information about the flight, the speed and **altitude** (height above sea level). She asks you **to fasten the belts**, not to smoke, to put your luggage in the **overhead locker**, to turn off all mobile phones and electronic devices. She will help you to get comfortable in your seat.

When the plane is **landing** at the **airstrip** (a strip of ground set aside for the takeoff and landing of aircraft) or taking off you have an opportunity to enjoy the wonderful scenery and landscapes. Landing formalities and **customs regulation** are about the same in all countries. While still onboard the plane the passenger is given an

arrival card¹ (a legal document used by a country's immigration authorities to provide passenger identification and a record of a person's entry to a country) to fill in. After the passenger has **disembarked**, officials will **examine (check)** his passport and visa to see if they are in order. When these formalities have been completed the passenger goes to the Customs² for an examination of his luggage. The Customs inspector may ask to open the bags for inspection. Then he will put a stamp on each piece of luggage.

No doubt, travelling by air is the most convenient and comfortable means of travelling, but if you are **airsick** the flight may seem not so nice to you. You may also experience some unpleasant feeling when the plane gets into an **air-pocket/bump** (a region of low pressure causing an aircraft to lose height suddenly) and your ears can hurt or crack painfully due to the pressure fall when the plane takes off or lands. One more inconvenience is **jet-lag** (a general feeling of fatigue and disorientation often experienced by travellers who cross several time zones in relatively few hours).

B*. Extended Vocabulary

mechanic	бортмеханік
hangar	ангар
cockpit	кабіна
call button	кнопка виклику бортпровідника(ці)
window seat	місце біля ілюмінатора
aisle seat	місце біля проходу
non-stop flight	безпосадочний політ
boarding	посадка (на літак)
unscheduled stop	вимушена посадка
domestic flight	рейс на внутрішніх лініях
direct flight	прямий рейс
shuttle flight	човниковий рейс
to taxi over the airfield	вирулювати на старт
scheduled flight	рейс за розкладом
delayed flight	рейс із запізненням
customs/custom-house	митниця
customs official/inspector	митник
customs declaration/bill of entry	митна декларація

¹ there he writes in block letters his name in full, country of residence, permanent address, purpose and length of visit; and address in the country he is visiting

customs duty/impost	митний збір
dutiable (duty-free)	той, що обкладається (не обкладається) митом

C*. Signs you might see at the airport

Short stay (<i>скорочено від Short stay car park</i>)	короткострокове паркування
Long stay (<i>скор. від Long stay car park</i>)	довгострокове паркування
Arrivals	Прибуття
Departures	Відправка
International check-in	Міжнародна реєстрація
International departures	Відправка міжнародних рейсів
Domestic flights	місцеві рейси
Toilets	туалети
Information	Інформація/довідкове бюро
Ticket offices	Каси
Lockers	Автоматична камера зберігання
Payphones	Телефони-автомати
Check-in closes 40 minutes before departure	Реєстрація завершується за 40 хвилин до відправки
Gates 1-32	Вихід 1-32 (<i>до літаків</i>)
Tax free/Duty free shopping	Магазини безмитних товарів
Transfers/Flight connections	Пересадка
Baggage reclaim	Видача багажу
Passport control	Паспортний контроль
Customs	Митниця
Car hire	Прокат автомобілів
Departures board	Рейси, що відправляються
Check-in open	Реєстрація відкрита
Go to Gate ...	Пройдіть до Виходу №...
(Flight ... is) delayed	Рейс №... затримується
(Flight ... is) cancelled	Рейс №... відкладається
Now boarding	Посадка на ...
Last call	Останній виклик (<i>оголошується для пасажирів, що спізнюються</i>)
Gate closing / Gate closed	Ворота зачиняються/зачинені
Arrivals board	Рейси, що прибувають
Expected 23:25	Очікується о 23:25
Landed 09:52	Приземлився о 09:52

16. Match the words and their explanations.

1.	jet-lag	a)	a room where passengers can await departure
2.	destination	b)	gate where passengers take on board a ship or aircraft
3.	booking reference	c)	an electronic device that gives an audible or other signal when it is close to metal, used, for example, to detect hidden weapons in the luggage of passengers at the airport
4.	to check in	d)	the place to which someone or something is going or being sent
5.	departure lounge	e)	leaving, typically to start a journey
6.	departure gate	f)	a sequence comprised of six letters and/or numbers used to uniquely identify your booking
7.	metal detector	g)	pass for boarding an aircraft, given to a passenger when the ticket is issued or upon check-in at the airport
8.	departure	h)	to leave off the ground when beginning the flight in an aircraft
9.	altitude	i)	to arrive and register
10.	boarding pass	j)	a general feeling of fatigue and disorientation often experienced by travellers by jet aircraft who cross several time zones in relatively few hours
11.	airstrip	k)	height above sea level
12.	arrival card	l)	a sitting place for a passenger in a vehicle
13.	air pocket	m)	a region of low pressure causing an aircraft to lose height suddenly
14.	seat	n)	a legal document used by a country's immigration authorities to provide passenger identification and an record of a person's entry to a country
15.	to take off	o)	a strip of ground set aside for the takeoff and landing of aircraft

17. Match the English sentences with their Ukrainian equivalents, and then learn them.

1.	what's your seat number?	a)	бажаєте поїсти чи попити?
2.	could you please put that in the overhead locker?	b)	капітан вимкнув сигнал «Пристібнути ремені»
3.	please pay attention to this short safety demonstration	c)	ми підемо на посадку через 15 хвилин
4.	please turn off all mobile phones and electronic devices	d)	залишайтеся, будь-ласка, на своїх місцях до повної зупинки літака
5.	the captain has turned off the Fasten Seatbelt sign	e)	будь-ласка, пристібніть ремені й установіть крісла у вертикальне положення
6.	how long does the flight take?	f)	будь-ласка, зверніть на увагу на цю коротку демонстрацію заходів безпеки
7.	would you like any food or refreshments?	g)	який у вас номер місця?
8.	we'll be landing in about fifteen minutes	h)	скільки часу триватиме політ?
9.	please fasten your seatbelt and return your seat to the upright position	i)	покладіть це, будь-ласка, у верхнє відділення
10.	please stay in your seat until the aircraft has come to a complete standstill	j)	будь-ласка, вимкніть мобільні телефони та електронні прилади

18. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian. Mind the use of the target words and word combinations.

1. If you travel by plane, you will arrive at your destination on time. 2. The queue at the booking office was so long that I was afraid my train would leave before I managed to get my ticket. 3. The plane got into so many air pockets that I felt terribly airsick during the whole flight. 4. Our flight was cancelled because of severe snow, so we had to celebrate Christmas at the airport. 5. When the plane was taking off, the man on the next seat fell and struck his head against the wall as he didn't fasten his seatbelt. 6. He was stranded at the airport overnight

because the plane was delayed by fog. Air passengers often suffer such delays. 7. Last week George flew to New York. It was an early-morning flight: the plane was to take off at 6 a.m. and to land at 7 a.m. local time. 8. After a long flight across several time zones and I felt sleepy, weak and jaded because of jet lag.

19. Match the definitions of the types of aircraft with the defined words. Use the dictionary is necessary. Then learn the words.

- | | |
|---------------------|--|
| 1. airliner | a) large passenger aircraft |
| 2. airship | b) aircraft used to carry freight and goods |
| 3. glider | c) spacecraft for repeated use, esp. between the earth and a space station |
| 4. helicopter | d) light aircraft without an engine |
| 5. space shuttle | e) plane with a jet engine |
| 6. airbus | f) short-rout passenger aircraft |
| 7. jet plane | g) aircraft having a speed greater than that of sound |
| 8. supersonic plane | h) power-driven aircraft lighter than air |
| 9. jumbo (jet) | i) large airliner for several hundred passengers |
| 10. air freighter | j) wingless aircraft obtaining lift and propulsion from horizontally revolving overhead blades |

Reading

Pre-Reading Activities

Answer the following questions:

1) Have you ever travelled by plane? Was it a domestic flight or did you travel abroad? 2) What are the main advantages of travelling by air? 3) Are there any disadvantages of travelling by plane? Name them and motivate your point of view. 4) Do you usually feel motion sick? What transportation means make you motion sick? What do you usually do to avoid this condition? 5) Have you (or your friends) ever experienced jet-lag? What did you/they do to come into a normal condition? How much time does one usually require to get into norm?

20. a) Read and translate the text.

Travelling by Plane: Disadvantages

A century ago people used to travel in horse-drawn carriages and carts. Airplanes are obviously a much more comfortable conveyance than covered wagons, but hurtling around the world in a metal box can have its unpleasant moments.

One obvious problem is lack of space though this varies considerably depending on airline and airplane model. If you are very tall, you may prefer an aisle seat. This will hopefully give you a chance to stretch your legs into the aisle from time to time. Even better is to get a "bulkhead seat": there is usually more legroom in those positions.

Another big problem that you may experience while travelling by plane is airsickness. If you get motion sick easily, you may be more comfortable if you take some sort of motion sickness drug before you fly. Note that you must take the drugs *before* you get sick; there is unfortunately nothing that will relieve airsickness once it has started. These drugs tend to make one drowsy that is a benefit on a long plane ride. Motion sickness is caused in part by a discrepancy between what the eye sees and what the inner ear feels. This is why the driver of a car gets sick much less frequently than a passenger: the driver is continuously watching the road. It may help to close your eyes the moment you start to consider thinking about getting airsick. If you do come down with discomfort, the only way to feel better is to empty your stomach. "Barf bags" are usually located in the pouch on the back of the seat in front of you.

The air that you breathe inside an airline cabin isn't really good. The cabin is pressurized, since the air is so thin at altitude, but it is still substantially weaker. This is part of why air travel can be so draining. Furthermore, the air is very dry. This can lead to dehydration, which can also make you feel lousy. You should bring a litre or two of water with you, and guzzle that non-stop throughout the trip.

Finally, the air is filled with the exhaust products of your fellow travellers. One of these can be cigarette smoke; while smoking has been banned on most flights, such rules are not followed around the globe. Another exhaust product is germs. Because airplane tickets are so expensive, and because such effort is involved in making such a trip, people will fly sick. If your immune system is weak, you may well want to wrap your face in a scarf or wear a surgical mask.

Because of the altitude, airplanes can also be quite cold, especially the floor. Planes are also very noisy. You might not think this is a big deal, but it wears away at you. Many of the large newer jet planes have sound systems and TV systems for movies and infomercials built-in. If there is nothing of that sort on your plane, you can bring portable players aboard with you, but airlines may restrict their use (especially on takeoff and landing) as electromagnetic fields generated by consumer electronics can interfere with the airplane's navigational signals. We'd choose to be bored than in a plane crash.

Food on airlines is not as good as you would expect. If you have food allergies, you are probably safest bringing your own food with you. Besides, you should never get on an airplane hungry as the food there may be delayed due to many reasons: for example, your plane may get into a turbulence zone where the flight crew is not allowed to serve meals or you can't eat the food you are served. The best bet is to eat before you get on or take some granola bar you can snack on.

Most people have a fear of heights. Together with extreme media coverage of plane crashes this can lead to fear of flying. This is not a rational fear, if looked at in the context of all possible risks (driving a car may be even more dangerous). Even if airplanes flew like bricks, the plane would cover quite a few horizontal miles were it to fall, so the pilots have quite a bit of time to search around for a convenient highway to land on. Furthermore, commercial jets always have at least two (and usually three) engines. The chances of two failing simultaneously are very slim. So relax.

Jet lag is your body's way of asking you not to break its normal cycle. Basically, your body is used to falling asleep at certain times of the day. If you go across multiple time zones, your body doesn't much care: it still wants to fall asleep at its normal time, and it doesn't much care if it happens to be noon. People say that it takes about one day per hour of time shift to totally get over jet lag and that it is much harder to travel east than it is to travel west.

Another big disadvantage of air travels is frequent delays. You can be stuck on the ground because of fog, thunderstorms, a (apparently false) smoke alarm. If you are stuck somewhere overnight because of the fault of the airline, they will usually furnish you with a hotel room, breakfast, and the first flight out in the morning. But if it's because of the weather, that's your own problem. Either you hang out

in the airport (another good reason to bring food with you!) or find the hotel yourself.

If you miss a flight, most airlines will help you out. If you are waiting to board a flight and it is suddenly cancelled, there will be a race to the next airline counter to try to get on the next flight. Instead of following the sheep to the counter, head for the nearest phone and phone the airline reservations system. You get the same result without standing in line.

Despite all these disadvantages air flights still remain the fastest and the most convenient way of travelling. Now that you are armed to teeth with all above tips to overcome these disadvantages, you will definitely travel by air with more pleasure.

b) Learn the following words.

conveyance – транспортний засіб; lack of space – нестача місця; aisle seat – місце в проході; bulkhead seat – місце біля перегородки між салонами літака; airsickness – повітряна хвороба; drowsy – сонливий; barf bag – гігієнічний пакет; pressurize – чинити тиск; draining – засушливий; dehydration – зневоднення; lousy – мерзенний, паскудний; guzzle – попивати; exhaust – вихлоп, відходи; germ – мікроб; wear away – відбиватися, впливати; infomercial – інформаційна реклама; restrict – обмежувати; consumer electronics – побутова електроніка; interfere – заважати, втручатися plane crash – авіакатастрофа; granola bar – злаковий батончик; media coverage – висвітлення в засобах масової інформації; time shift – зсув у часі; get over – подолати; furnish – надати, забезпечити; reservations system – електронна система бронювання квитків.

21. Comprehension check.

1. Which seat in the plane would be more convenient for a very tall person? 2. How can one avoid airsickness? 3. What is a “barf bag”? 4. Why is it recommended to drink much water in the plane? 5. Why do airlines restrict using consumer electronics on board a plane, especially on take off and landing? 6. Why is it good to take some food with you to the plane? 7. What are the reasons of jet lag? How long does it take to get back to normal condition? 8. What are the most frequent reasons of flight delays? 9. When do the airlines furnish you with all necessary conveniences if your flight is delayed? 10. What should you do if you miss the plane?

22. *Find in the text words similar in meaning to the following:*

- 1) queue; 2) system of booking tickets; 3) microorganism;
- 4) nausea caused by motion, esp. by travelling in a vehicle; 5) an aircraft powered by one or more engines using jet propulsion for forward thrust; 6) zone of violent or unsteady movement of air; 7) an accident when an aircraft falls from the sky and violently hits the land or sea; 8) losing a large amount of water from the body; 9) waste products; 10) choice.

23. *Find in the text the English equivalents for the following Ukrainian words and phrases.*

- 1) внаслідок багатьох причин; 2) ліки від повітряної хвороби;
- 3) більше місця для ніг; 4) портативний програвач; 5) заважати навігаційним сигналам; 6) страх висоти; 7) озброєний до зубів;
- 8) почуватися паскудно; 9) харчова алергія; 10) численні часові пояси.

24. *Find in the text sentences with the following expressions and read them aloud. Translate them into Ukrainian and let your classmates translate them back into English without a textbook.*

- 1) it still wants to fall asleep at its normal time;
- 2) electromagnetic fields generated by consumer electronics; 3) wear a surgical mask; 4) the driver of a car gets sick much less; 5) hurtling around the world in a metal box; 6) nothing that will relieve airsickness; 7) quite a few horizontal miles; 8) across multiple time zones; 9) following the sheep to the counter; 10) such rules are not followed around the globe.

25. *Complete the sentences the way the author puts it in the text.*

1. Even if airplanes flew like bricks ...
2. Because of the altitude, ...
3. If you are stuck somewhere overnight ...
4. If you are waiting to board a flight ...
5. Besides, you should never get on an airplane hungry ...
6. This is not a rational fear ...
7. Motion sickness is caused ...
8. One of these can be cigarette smoke ...
9. If your immune system is weak ...
10. Despite all these disadvantages ...

26. Dramatize the following dialogue.

An Airplane Trip

Madeline: There seems to be some delay. Our plane is supposed to leave at 2:10 and it's already 2:20. Wait! That's our flight they are announcing over the loudspeaker now: Flight 620, Gate 14.

Juliet: You have the tickets.

M.: Come on! There's a line forming. If we hurry we can have our choice of seats when we get on the plane. I like to sit in the middle of the plane.

J.: (*obviously ill at ease*) Do you want to know something? I'm beginning to feel a little nervous.

M.: There's nothing to get nervous about.

J.: This is my first plane trip. I used to travel by train or by car... Maybe I'm not going to like it.

M.: There's nothing at all to worry about. Once you're up in the air it's just like sitting at home in your own living room. Here, take your ticket. You have to show it as you go through the gate.

J.: Do I need my passport?

M.: Not here. You show your passport in Miami when we arrive.

Airplane hostess: Everyone, please, fasten your seat belts. No smoking. This is Flight 620 now leaving for Miami and arriving to Miami International Airport at 3:30 standard time. We shall fly at an elevation of 5 thousand feet.

J.: (*looking around*) I don't see what the idea of seat belts is.

M.: You're supposed to fasten yourself firmly to your seat in case of an accident. Otherwise you may be thrown against the seat in front and injured.

J.: But if the plane catches on fire I won't be able to get out either.

M.: Nothing like that ever happens, Julie. You're beginning to make me nervous. Why don't you take one of those books we've bought this morning? Probably reading could calm you down... Let's see what we have... *The Black Mask*, *Love Forever*, *Death in the Clouds*... oh, ... no, this book is not for you. Aha, this one may interest you: *How to Torture Your Husband*...

J.: No, thanks. I've got my own system... Why, what's that terrible noise?!

M.: You shouldn't shout like that, Julie. Those are the motors. They're warming them up. We're about to take off. Look! We're starting.

Isn't it thrilling? Now we're leaving the ground... Julie, stop clenching your teeth and open your eyes. We're already in the air and you are completely safe and sound. Look down below and see how pretty the city looks from the air.

J.: I may get sick if I look down. Heavens, what was that? The plane stopped suddenly.

M.: That was probably an air pocket. Every time a plane strikes an air pocket it always dips a little.

J.: Now ear hurts. It just cracked terribly. I suppose that's the atmosphere pressure. How high are we?

M.: I've heard that if you open your mouth and swallow hard, your ears won't crack.

J.: (*between swallows*) How many things can happen to you in an airplane.

M.: Nothing serious is going to happen to you. Thousands of people travel by plane every day and nothing happens to them. Be a little philosophical. When your turn comes to die, you'll die – and not before.

J.: But suppose today happens to be the pilot's turn?

M.: Then the co-pilot will take over. These big planes always carry two pilots. Now, please, sit back and relax. We'll soon be in Miami and all your troubles will be over.

(from *Brush up Your Everyday English* by T. Venkel, A. Val)

b) Answer the following questions.

1. Have you ever travelled by air? Where did you fly? Was it a long-distance flight? 2. Are you afraid of flying? Have you a fear of altitude? Why? 3. How can people keep themselves off the trip when travelling by plane? What advice would you give? Motivate your answer. 4. Do you agree that airplanes are really safer nowadays than any other transportation means? Why (not)? Give your reasons.

27. Fill in the blanks:

Words for reference: *co-pilot, flight, passenger, size, trip, food, economy class, speed, stewardesses, safety belts, meals*

Airliner

Airliners, or _____ planes differ from light planes not only in size but also in speed and equipment. They are designed

to carry a great number of people over long distances without stopping to refuel.

A passenger airliner has a comfortable cabin with soft carpets, adjustable upholstered seats, washrooms, and individual air vents and reading lights. It has a galley for preparing _____. Many airlines offer tourist or _____ service, which costs less than first class travel.

The _____ of four-engine airliners ranges from about 350 miles per hour (mph) for propeller-driven planes to more than 500 mph for jet propelled planes.

The crew of an airliner works as a team to make the _____ pleasant. While the passengers take their seats, the pilot or captain, co-pilot, flight engineer, and stewardesses prepare the plane for flight. The pilot assisted by the _____, checks the instruments and tests the controls. The flight engineer checks the other mechanical equipment. The _____ check the passenger list, make sure that the passengers fasten their _____ for take off. Later the stewardesses distribute magazines, serve _____, and do other things to make the trip enjoyable.

(From: *Thematic Vocabulary. Tests in English* by M. Misztal)

Grammar Revision: The Non-Finite Forms of the Verb: *the Infinitive, Participle, and Gerund* (See: *Reference Grammar*)

Mind!

Some verbs are followed by the infinitive of another verb. Common examples are: *agree; decide; expect; fail; hope; manage; mean; pretend; promise; want; would like* and some others. For example: *I decided to buy a new car.*

Some verbs are usually followed by the Gerund. Common examples are: *admit; avoid; deny; don't mind/would mind; enjoy; finish; give up; practise* and some others. For example: *He practised typing for hours.*

Some verbs can be followed by either *-ing* form or an infinitive without much change in meaning. Common examples are: *begin/start; continue/go on/keep on; intend; like; love; propose* and some others. For example: *They began meeting each other after work. They began to meet each other after work.*

28. Read and translate the sentences into Ukrainian. State the function of the *ing*-forms:

A.

1. Think of her coping with the task so well! It's more than I was hoping for.
2. Being a man of dignity, Charles couldn't behave differently.
3. His being so very proud makes living with him very difficult.
4. It's the

first time I've heard about her wanting to find the job. 5. Don't tell my wife about my breaking the watch. She'll be upset, it's her birthday present. 6. I didn't know Mike was capable of telling lies. 7. Flowers being very expensive at this time of the year, we decided to give her a box of chocolates. 8. Having finished the business in town I took the commute train back home. 9. Why should you mind her being invited to the party? 10. Not feeling too well he decided to stay at home.

B.

1. Being interested in the subject he would go to every lecture the professor gave. 2. Discussing things is always useful. 3. Being bored they left the party before it ended. 4. Not knowing the rules of grammar he made a lot of mistakes. 5. Not knowing the rules of grammar leads to many mistakes. 6. Looking after children is a difficult thing. 7. Growing flowers was something she enjoyed. 8. Going down the stairs I suddenly remembered I had left the key at home. 9. Turning round he saw what was happening. 10. Speaking before such a large audience made him very nervous.

29. Some of these sentences contain errors. Find and correct them.

1. I enjoy to play tennis. 2. I love living near the sea. 3. What would you like doing tonight? 4. David agreed coming the next day. 5. She began to ask a lot of questions. 6. The doctor failed saving the injured man. 7. He denied to rob the jewellery store. 8. I don't mind to let you go home earlier today. 9. She continued studying all day. 10. I intended to tell you, but I forgot.

30. Put the verb in brackets in the correct form.

1. I've decided _____ (start) seeing my boyfriend again. 2. Are you sure you really want _____ (see) him again, Jennifer? 3. Would you mind _____ (tell) me about your problem? 4. If you can manage _____ (accompany) me – that would be really great! 5. I'm not sure I want _____ (marry) him. 6. He admitted _____ (steal) the money from the safe. 7. You should promise _____ (take) care of the baby. 8. I can't pretend _____ (be) glad to see him. I despise him! 9. If you decide _____ (apply) for this job, I'll support

you. 10. He avoided _____ (see) his ex-wife because she was a very rowdy woman.

31. Choose the appropriate form of the Participle in the following sentences.

1. I must have the air-conditioner *fixing/fixed*. 2. I don't find this film *amusing/amused*. 3. Can you smell something *burning/burned*. 4. Deeply *shocking/shocked* I left the room. 5. He walked with his collar *turning/turned* up, hands in pockets. 6. She paid no attention to the *ringing/rung* telephone. 7. Don't you think your hair needs *cutting/cut*. 8. When *writing/written* the test yesterday I forgot to do the last task. 9. He opened the letter with *shaking/shaken* fingers. 10. You'd better stay at home after such a *tiring/tired* day.

32. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct forms. Note that sometimes a bare infinitive will be required.

1. Before trains were invented people used (travel) on horseback or in stage coaches. It used (take) a stage coach three days (go) from London to Bath. 2. Tom: I want (catch) the 7 a.m. train tomorrow. Ann: But that means (get) up at 6.00; and you're not very good at (get) up early, are you? 3. Did he manage (carry) the trunk upstairs? – No, he didn't. He isn't strong enough (move) it, let alone (carry) it upstairs. 4. Peter: Wouldn't it be better (ask) Tom (leave) his camera at home? Jack: It would be no good (ask) Tom (do) that. It would be like (ask) a woman (travel) without a handbag. 5. There is no point in (arrive) half an hour early. We'd only have (wait). – I don't mind (wait). It's better (be) too early than too late. 6. I always try (come) in quietly but they always hear me (go) upstairs. It's impossible (climb) an old wooden staircase at night without (make) a noise. 7. The inspector asked (see) my ticket and when I wasn't able (find) it he made me (buy) another. – He probably suspected you of (try) (travel) without one. 8. The police have put up a railing here (prevent) people (rush) out of the station and (dash) straight across the road. 9. I'm thinking of (go) to Oxford tomorrow on my motorbike. Would you like (come)? – No, thanks. I want (go) Oxford, but I'd rather (go) by train. I hate (travel) by road. 10. He noticed the helicopter (hover) over the field. Then, to his astonishment, he saw a rope ladder (be) thrown out and three men (climb) down it.

33. Make up sentences as in the model using the prompts:

Model:

An old man: I travelled overnight and felt awful afterwards.

Doctor: Then try to avoid travelling overnight.

An old man: I _____ and felt awful afterwards.

Doctor: _____

Prompts: 1) overate; 2) went to bed too late; 3) made a long speech; 4) read in bad light; 5) carried a heavy suitcase; 6) took sleeping pills; 7) travelled by jet; 8) worked all weekend; 9) quarrelled with my neighbours; 10) slept in a haunted room*.

* haunted room – кімната з привидами

34. a) Read and translate the text in the Information File.

Information File

Pros and Cons of Air Travel

As well as being very exciting, airplane travel really can be one of the most efficient ways to travel around the world. The availability of cheap air travel means that it is now easy for almost anyone to fly anywhere. We will now look at the advantages and disadvantages of air travel. Nobody can doubt the fact that our lives have been changed by air travel. Below are just a few of the **good points** relating to air travel.

- It is much faster to travel by plane; it is possible to cross to the other side of the world in less than a day. It is now possible to easily go to places that would have previously been too far away for most of us to travel to.

- When you are looking for a safe way to travel from one place to another, air travel is near the top.

- It is now possible to get to destinations all over the world at very affordable prices because of the availability of cheap flights.

- Airplanes can be quite comfortable and this makes it a nice way to travel.

There are a number of **disadvantages** to travelling by plane these days even though it really has made a big difference to most people's lives.

- Most airports will be situated on the outskirts of the city so once you get off the plane you will still have a bit of a journey before reaching your final destination. And when you take into consideration the fact that you have to wait around in the airport before taking off, plane travel can

sometimes end up taking you just as long as other types of travel, particularly internal flights.

- There are a lot of people who feel that the hassle involved with security checks on airplanes can be quite troublesome.

You do not have nearly the same room for movement on a plane as you do on a train. Some economy sections of certain planes are quite crammed and there is very little room.

b) Make up the similar lists of pros and cons of travelling by train, by ship and by car. Motivate your choice of advantages and disadvantages by giving the examples from your own experience or from the experience of your friends.

35. a) Read the following text.

Airplane Horror Stories

Sure, you can laugh about it now – but at the time, it was far from funny. Unfortunately, it's also inevitable. The more you travel, the more likely it is that you've had an ill-fated journey. Nowadays the “transport of the day” is the airplane, and the stories below are from travellers who didn't find the skies quite so friendly.

– *Evalla:*

"My worst flight was on a trip from Dublin to London. Out of nowhere, the plane took a nose dive ... for about eight seconds! I know it doesn't seem like that long, but seriously, count for eight seconds. That's a long nose dive! Passengers started screaming, luggage went flying out of the overhead bins and the lights went out. So scary! I really thought the plane was going to crash. Everything ended up being okay, at least I think so. The pilot never even announced what happened."

– *prideoftheyankees:*

"Last November, my wife and I were scheduled to take an American Airlines flight from Newark to Nassau, connecting in Miami. We boarded the flight 30 minutes late only to be told that lightning was in the area and takeoff would be delayed. Then we were told that there was no fuel in the plane and takeoff would be delayed. Then we were told that the fuel was in the wrong tanks, the plane was not balanced, and they could not take off the gas cap. They called Houston and eventually we took off. We missed our connecting flight

and we had to sleep on the floor of the Miami International Airport because there were no more rooms left due to Hurricane Katrina."

– *Pat O:*

"There was never a trip that something did not go wrong. Once I flew from Rhode Island to Washington D.C. and ended up in Hartford, Connecticut for the night instead. It stopped in Hartford and when it landed, the pilot landed so hard and fast that when he applied the brakes, the back door blew off. It was something to see, watching the runway from the back of the plane with no door. Fortunately we had already lost the cabin pressure so no one flew out with the door and the seat they were in."

– *Charlotte M*

"On a recent flight from Vegas to Atlanta, there was a man on the plane that took the intercom from the flight attendant and told us, 'This plane is going to crash.' He then attempted to open an exit door. Strangely, the man only became crazy after he was served alcoholic beverages on the plane. I received a letter of apology from AirTran, but this was still an incredibly scary incident. We were very lucky that we had four off-duty Atlanta police officers on the plane that subdued the man. Should I have been offered free flights by AirTran?"

b) Which of the stories is the scariest, to your mind? Have you heard of any other horror stories about airplane trips? Share them with your group mates.

c) The situations described are not so scary indeed, if you analyse them afterwards. But they seem to be really very scary when you experience them being in the airplane. Why, do you think, is it so? Motivate your answer.

d) What do you think is the only possible correct behaviour in such situations? Give your motivated advice (in writing).*

36. *a) Dramatise the following dialogue.*

At the Customs

Teresa (*looking at the signs RED CHANNEL and GREEN CHANNEL*): Excuse me, how do I decide whether to go through the red or the green channel?

Customs Official: If you have goods to declare you go through the red channel. If you haven't any goods to declare, you go through the green one.

Teresa: How do I decide whether I have goods to declare?

Customs Official: Well, madam, this notice here tells you.

Teresa: Oh, I can't understand it very well.

Customs Official: If you're a visitor coming here for less than six months, and you haven't any spirits, wine or tobacco in excess of the duty free allowance, you go through the green channel.

Teresa: Oh, I have got some spirits.

Customs Official: How much have you got?

Teresa: A bottle of brandy. And I've got two hundred cigarettes.

Customs Official: That's all right. You're allowed one bottle and two hundred cigarettes. Have you got any expensive presents, things for other people? You have to declare anything which cost over ten pounds.

Teresa: Well, yes, I have got a watch which cost more than ten pounds in English money.

Customs Official: Then go through the red channel. And my colleague may wish to look inside your luggage.

Teresa: I see. Thank you.

(Teresa goes into the red channel and reaches the Customs Official).

Customs Official: Are these two bags all you have, madam?

Teresa: Yes, and this holdall.

Customs Official: Have you any spirits, wine or tobacco in excess of the duty free allowance?

Teresa: No, I just have this bottle of brandy and these cigarettes.

Customs Official: You're allowed a bottle of spirits and that number of cigarettes. That's all right. Have you any articles which you intend to leave in the United Kingdom?

Teresa: This watch. It cost fifteen pounds.

Customs Official: Have you got any evidence of the cost – an invoice or a bill which shows what you paid for it.

Teresa: Yes, I have the bill. Here it is.

Customs Official: Thank you. I'll have a look in your luggage. Would you please open the two bags? Thank you. And I'll let you know in a moment the duty you must pay on the watch.

Teresa: Thank you very much.

(from: <http://abc.vvsu.ru/Books/Travelli/page0013.asp>)

b) Look through the form of Customs Declaration. Fill it in as if you are travelling to the US and have to present it at the Customs.

Department of the Treasury United States Customs Service

CUSTOMS DECLARATION

**PRESENT TO THE IMMIGRATION AND CUSTOMS
INSPECTORS**

EACH ARRIVING TRAVELLER OR HEAD OF THE FAMILY MUST WRITE IN THE FOLLOWING INFORMATION. PLEASE PRINT.		
1. FAMILY NAME	GIVEN NAME	MIDDLE INITIAL
2. DATE OF BIRTH (Mo./Day/Yr.)		3. VESSEL OR AIRLINE & FLT. No.
4. CITIZEN OF (Country)		5. REZIDENT OF (Country)
6. PERMANENT ADDRESS		
7. ADDRESS WHILE IN THE UNITED STATES		
8. NAME AND RELATIONSHIP OF ACCOMPANYING FAMILY MEMBERS		
9. Are you or anyone in your party carrying any fruits, plants, meals, other plant or animal products, birds, snails or other live organisms of any kind? YES NO		
10. Have you or anyone in your party been on the farm or ranch outside the USA in the last 10 days? YES NO		
11. Are you or any family member carrying over \$ 5,000,00 (or the equivalent value in any currency) in monetary instruments such as coin, currency, traveller's checks, money orders etc.? <i>If yes, you must file a report on form 4790 as required by law.</i> YES NO		
12. <i>I certify that I have declared all items acquired abroad as required herein and that all oral and written statements which I have made, are true, correct and complete</i>		
SIGNATURE:		
NON-CITIZENS ONLY	13. US VISA ISSUED AT (place)	14. VISA DATE (Mo./Day/Yr.)

c) Choose from the list below the articles that can be imported by the person allowed to pass through:

- the Green Channel;
- the Red Channel (to be inspected by the Customs Officials);
- not allowed at all.

camera, personal belongings, antiquity, precious metals, souvenirs, food, a bottle of whiskey, a gun, printed matter, manuscripts, films, video and sound recordings, postage stamps, works of art (*with corresponding certificates*), items not for personal use; precious presents for other people, umbrella, medicines (*without personal doctor's prescription*), unknown liquids and aerosols, fruit, meat products, a bottle of perfume, 200 cigarettes, personal jewellery, 10 litres of still wine, explosive materials, chemicals, sweets, tools, flammable items, toothpaste, shampoo, clothes, honey.

37. Translate the following quotes and comment on them.

There are only two emotions in a plane: boredom and terror. – Orson Welles.

I feel about airplanes the way I feel about diets. It seems to me that they are wonderful things for other people to go on. – Jean Kerr.

If God had really intended men to fly, he'd make it easier to get to the airport. – George Winters.

Whenever we safely land in a plane, we promise God a little something. – Mignon McLaughlin, *The Neurotic's Notebook*.

I did not fully understand the dread term "terminal illness" until I saw Heathrow¹ for myself. – Dennis Potter.

Every year it takes less time to fly across the Atlantic and more time to drive to the office.

Lovers of air travel find it exhilarating to hang poised between the illusion of immortality and the fact of death. – Alexander Chase, *'Perspectives'*.

¹ a major international airport serving London, England, United Kingdom, the busiest airport in the United Kingdom and the third busiest airport in the world (as of 2012) in terms of total passenger traffic, handling more international passengers than any other airport around the globe

Vocabulary: Travelling by Train

Introductory Reading

38. Read the text and find out the meaning of the target words (in bold type).

Although aircraft is faster and, some people say, more convenient, the **railway** is still one of the most popular means of travel. First of all, the **railway tickets** are cheaper. And there are people who don't like flying, and there are others who enjoy travelling by train more than by plane.

With a train you have speed, comfort and pleasure combined. From the comfortable corner seat of a **carriage/car** you have a splendid view of the countryside. If you are hungry you can have a meal in the **dining-car/restaurant car** or the **buffet-car** and if the journey is long you can have a comfortable bed in a **sleeper/sleeping car/Pullman**¹.

A big **railway station** is a very busy and interesting place. There are a lot of **platforms** at which trains come in and go out. A train is standing at one of the platforms ready to leave. The **porters/(US) red caps** are very busy carrying luggage to the train or pushing it on their **trucks**. On another platform a train has just come in. Some passengers are getting out, others are getting in. Those who haven't bought their tickets in advance are waiting in queues at the **ticket-office/ticket booth**. You can also buy your tickets at the **ticket machine** paying for them both in cash and with your credit card.

When you arrive in a large town you may leave your heavy luggage at the station. In this case you will look for the **Left Luggage/luggage office**.

There is also a **waiting-room** where you can relax until it is time to **board** your train. If you are hungry or thirsty you'll go to the **refreshment room**. If you don't remember the number of the platform

¹ In the United States, **Pullman** was used to refer to railroad sleeping cars which were built and operated on most U.S. railroads by the Pullman Company (founded by George Pullman) from 1867 to December 31, 1968. It also refers to railway dining cars in Europe that were operated by the Pullman Company, or lounge cars operated by the Compagnie Internationale des Wagons-Lits. Specifically, in Great Britain, *Pullman* refers to the lounge cars operated by the "British Pullman Car Company".

from which your train leaves, look it up on the **arrivals and departures board/time-table board**. You can also go to the **inquiry office/information bureau** for any information concerning your trip. If you have lost something you need to find **lost property office**. If you find anything, if it is a small item like glasses or umbrella, you can take them to the lost property office, too. If it is big, something like a parcel or a suitcase, report it to the **police office**, never touch it yourself.

B. Essential Vocabulary

passenger train	пасажирський потяг
fast train	швидкий потяг
slow/stopping train	приміський потяг, що зупиняється на всіх станціях
long distance train (a sleep train)	потяг далекого слідування
local/way train	потяг місцевого призначення
through train	потяг прямого сполучення
express train	експрес/кур'єрський потяг
freight/goods/cargo train	товарний потяг
electric/commuter train	електричка
front (coaches) of a train; rear (coaches) of a train	голова, хвіст потяга
regular/service train	потяг регулярного сполучення
cancellation	повернення квитків
carriage, car	вагон
non-smoker/car for non-smokers	вагон для тих, хто не палить
smoking car	вагон для курців
sleeping car/sleeper/Pullman	спальний вагон
dining-car/restaurant car/buffet-car/diner	вагон-ресторан
lounge car	вагон-люкс із відкидними кріслами
luggage van	багажний вагон
compartment	купе
berth (upper/lower)	поліція/спальне місце (верхня/нижня)
luggage rack	багажна сітка
train times/train schedule	розклад руху потягів
arrivals and departures board/time-table board	дошка розкладів

porter/(US)red cap	носильник
ticket collector	контролер
guard/(US)conductor	провідник
change of trains/transfer	пересадка
to catch the train	встигнути на потяг
to miss the train	не встигнути на потяг
check-room/luggage office	камера зберігання
lost and found/lost property office	бюро знахідок
information bureau/inquiry office	довідкове бюро

C. Sings you might see at the railway station

Tickets	Квитки
Platform	Платформа
Waiting Room	Зала очікування
Left Luggage	Багажне відділення
Lost Property	Бюро знахідок
Entrance/Exit (Way out)	Вхід/Вихід
Underground	Метро
Bus Stop/Taxi (Rank)	Зупинка автобуса/Стоянка таксі
Request Stop	Зупинка на вимогу
on time	вчасно
expected	прибуває
delayed	затримується
cancelled	відмінено
calling at ...	зупиняється в ...
Seat ...	Місце № ...
Car ...	Вагон № ...
Priority Seat	Спеціальне місце (для вагітних, літніх людей, дітей та інвалідів)
To Trains	До потягів
Mind the Gap	Обережно, щілина!
North-/East-/West-/Southbound Platform	Платформа північного (східного, західного, південного) напрямку

39. Fill in the blanks using the words from Ex. 38.

1. _____ carry people, while the goods, livestock and raw materials are transported in _____. 2. Yesterday I left my briefcase in the train, but luckily it was in _____. 3. When I was leaving the train, the _____ asked for my ticket, but I couldn't give it to him. I had to give all my tickets to my boss to be paid a refund for travel

expenses. 4. I was short of time to buy the ticket at the _____ so I took my Visa Card and bought tickets at the _____. 5. One can find out the train times on the _____. 6. In the sleeper the _____ is more comfortable than the _____. 7. The _____ takes care of the passengers and keeps the carriage and all the compartments in perfect order. 8. While travelling by _____ you don't have to arrive at the station 2 hours before the departure time as there is no registration; you should be there to have enough time not _____. 9. It is very difficult to get to your place. I had to _____ three times before I arrived to the right station. 10. There is no _____ from the city to my village, so we have to get there by two busses with a transfer. 11. My husband had sore throat and fever, that's why I asked the waiter from the _____ to bring some food and tea to our compartment. 12. At the railway station the _____ will help you to carry your luggage from the train to the taxi rank. 13. My taxi struck in the traffic jam for several hours and I arrived at the station to late _____. 14. When I entered my compartment, I saw a man smoking a pipe there. I was indignant as that was a _____. I asked the man to stop smoking, but he wouldn't even listen to me. So I went to _____ to complain. 15. It's highly recommended _____ in advance, because this route is very popular on this season. Thus there might be no tickets, and you won't be able to ride this train unless there is last minute _____. But you'd better not count on it.

Reading

Pre-Reading Activities

Answer the following questions:

1) How often do you travel by train? Do you enjoy travelling by train? Why/Why not? 2) What do you like or dislike about large stations? 3) When did you last travel by train? Where did you go? Did you book a ticket in advance? How much did it cost? Did you travel by an express or a stopping train? You didn't have to change trains did you? Did you travel light or heavy? Did you like the conductor? Was he/she very helpful? 4) When you travel far, which berth do you

prefer? How much does the bedding cost? How do you spend the time during the journey?

40. a) *Read and translate the article. Consult the dictionary, if necessary.*

Why Do People Love Train Travel So Much?

For some people the process of getting from one place to the other is a pain, a chore, an experience to dread with fear and trepidation. For others, like me, the act of travel itself (be it flying or riding in a car) is just part of the experience and it's something from which I get a lot of joy. But there's one form of transportation that seems to transcend the usual angst and to which most travellers feel drawn – the train. Be it a modern high speed train in Europe or an old fashioned steam train in rural Maryland, the train has captured the imaginations of people around the world and I wonder why.

The rise of the train in the 19th century leads to expansion on an unprecedented level, not only in the United States but around the world. Instead of months to travel a continent, it only took weeks and the experience was far more enjoyable. When the famous Pullman car was introduced, the highest of society could travel in the style to which they were accustomed and it is this gilded age of travel that I think fascinates most of us. We're so used to being ushered about like sheep in a stall that we want to enjoy those creature comforts that have all but disappeared. True, you won't get white glove dining on the TGV¹ out of Paris, but you do get some privacy, peace and quiet and civility. There's a lot to be said for that. The train in question doesn't have to be entirely practical either. Refurbished steam locomotives take passengers on joy rides around the world to experience the sensation of old time travel and to see the world in a new way. I was on one such scenic train ride and the train was packed, every seat sold as hundreds of people jockeyed to get on board a remnant of the past. There's just something about the experience that compels us.

¹ **TGV** (скор. фр. *Train à Grande Vitesse* — швидкісний потяг, читається: те-же-ве) — французька мережа швидкісних електропотягів, розроблена GEC-Alsthom і французьким залізничним оператором SNCF. Перша лінія була відкрита в 1981 році між Парижем та Ліоном.

Train travel isn't hard, especially when compared to flying. To fly in the modern era travellers must arrive hours early in order to be processed, poked and prodded losing valuable time from one's life. The actual flying experience itself isn't all that remarkable and one also must deal with getting to and from the airport, which is usually out of the way. Compare that to train travel. You aren't supposed to arrive early, that just clogs up the platform. It's perfectly all right to arrive on time, a sensation that just feels wrong to modern travellers. Boarding happens fast and hopefully orderly and the actual experience itself is wonderful. In a plane you're lucky if you get a few nice views, but on a train that's all you have. I've spent hours doing nothing but looking across the landscape as the train has raced past farms and flower fields. Add to that the fact that train stations are necessarily well located, usually in the centre of town and you have an experience that requires very little effort but which returns a maximum level of enjoyment.

Everything, the ease of use, the pleasant journeys and the recollections of days gone by all add up to creating a travel experience that just works. I know, here in the United States we've had some issues with our commuter train system and if you live outside of the Northeast corridor it's not really all that convenient. But in counties where it is well executed, namely Europe, it's possible to use the train to be more productive and to get around with a minimal level of effort. It's amazing to me that in the 21st century, amidst all the security precautions and fear that we can still enjoy a travel experience that is efficient and a pleasure to undertake. I can only hope that it stays that way for future travellers to enjoy.

(by Matt Long)

b) Learn the following words.

Chore – неприємна повсякденна робота; trepidation – хвилювання, тривога; transcend – перевищувати, переважати; angst – страх, тривога, хвилювання; to capture – захоплювати; to usher – проводити, супроводжувати; to refurbish – відновлювати, проводити реконструкцію; steam locomotive – локомотив, паротяг; scenic – театральний, інсценізований; to jockey – намагатися дістатися всіма можливими засобами; remnant – залишок; to compel – підкорювати; to poke – штовхати; to prod – підштовхувати, штурхати; to clog up – закупорювати; sensation –

відчуття; boarding – посадка; orderly – впорядковано; landscape – пейзаж, краєвид; recollection – згадка, пам'ять, роздум; county – (UK) графство, (US) округ; to execute – виконувати; precaution – запобіжний засіб, пересторога.

41. Find in the text words similar in meaning to the following:

1) a feeling of fear or agitation about something that may happen; 2) to absorb; 3) to renovate and redecorate; 4) a measure taken in advance to prevent something dangerous, unpleasant, or inconvenient from happening; 5) getting on board a train, plane, etc.; 6) a thing recollected; a memory; 7) poke (someone) with a finger, foot, or pointed object; to stimulate or persuade to do something; 8) a physical feeling or perception; 9) all the visible features of an area of countryside or land; 10) a routine unpleasant but necessary task.

42. Find in the text the English equivalents for the following Ukrainian words and phrases.

1) досвід, якого жахаються, тремтячи від страху; 2) потяг мчить повз ферми та поля квітів; 3) вимагає мінімум зусиль та надає натомість максимум задоволення; 4) ви не отримаєте вишуканого прислугування за обідом; 5) старомодний локомотив; 6) розважальні поїздки навколо світу; 7) золотий вік подорожування; 8) втрачати цінний час вашого життя; 9) ви таки отримаєте певну приватність, мир, і спокій, і люб'язність; 10) розвиток на безпрецедентному рівні.

43. Find in the text sentences with the following expressions and read them aloud. Translate them into Ukrainian and let your classmates translate them back into English without a textbook.

1) like sheep in a stall; 2) you're lucky if you get a few nice views; 3) amidst all the security precautions; 4) to experience the sensation of old time travel; 5) the highest of society could travel in the style to which they were accustomed; 6) the train was packed; 7) the actual experience itself is wonderful; 8) to which most travellers feel drawn; 9) in order to be processed, poked and prodded; 10) train stations are necessarily well located.

Speaking

44. a) Read and translate the text in Information File.

Information File

Why people travel by train?

– *Sammy*:

Maybe people choose to ride trains because the airports and airlines mistreat their passengers? That's the reason I ride the train. I refuse to tolerate the indignities foisted on a passively acquiescent¹ public at airport terminals and aboard commercial airliners.

The train is comfortable – especially in first class, where you can lie down and sleep, as the movement of the train rocks you. The dining car is wonderful – delicious meals, invigorating conversation, and wonderful passing scenery, with the train rocking back and forth.

The train is nostalgia – ride it while you still have the chance – before it fades away into history. There are no searches or hassles² on the train. If you want to be armed, it's okay – just don't advertise it. A private citizen can still feel safe, knowing he has the means to stop the bad guys.

On airplanes one has to be present at the check-in at least 1-3 hours beforehand. On a train, one can be there 1 minute before departure. Trains have an immaculate³ safety record. A train allows you to see the country and the area where you are travelling. Night trains are easier to sleep in than a plane, because on a plane you always hear the continuous whine of the engines – a train only has a clickety-clack of the wheels on the rails. Trains are cool and make people feel happy and nostalgic. Train crashes are much less frequent because there is no risk of hitting a train underneath you.

I adore trains! What about you?

– *Martin*:

My favourite example when I tell people why I love trains is this: Last year I took the Eurostar from London to Paris. Centre of the city to centre of the city. It was the same cost as a budget flight to Paris, but without the added cost of catching a train or bus to the outlying airports. The travel time itself was longer than a flight, but as soon as you start adding on the time it takes to get right to destination place from the airport, it's about the same. Then add on the time you must spend waiting

¹ поступливий, той, що мовчки погоджується

² надокучання

³ бездоганний, незаплямований, досконалий

in line at airport security, then waiting for the airline to tell you which gate you are at and the never-ending walk to the furthest reaches of the terminal! Instead I had two very enjoyable hours of relaxing, watching the English and French countryside go by out the window. Bliss!

– *Sofie*:

I agree with every positive aspect of train travel and still... I must admit I haven't travelled by train yet to go abroad, but as far as travelling by train in Belgium goes (I live in Belgium): I avoid it whenever I can. A lot of delays, a lot of strikes and there are still many places from where you have to take a bus to get to the station or places which aren't well connected so that you end up doing more than an hour by train whereas going by car would take you only half an hour.

I think the train is, exactly as you say it, a good way to travel, but I really don't like the train for 'every day life'. At least not in Belgium. It's unreliable and often not faster or cheaper than going some where by car. (And yes, I realize it is better for the environment)

– *Cheryl*:

I'm the opposite! I adore flying ... Love the feeling of taking off, landing and staring out the window at the landscape below whether it be a blanket of clouds, mountains or sea below. There isn't a better feeling for me.

Trains!? I'd rather poke my eyes out with a fork. I've had such bad experiences in Europe. I've seen the doors close early separating groups of people travelling together leaving some stranded on the platform! The trains are almost always late and I miss connections as I'm sorry ... 5 minutes is not always enough. It's slow and expensive. It tends to be cheaper for me to fly.

I've had some good experiences on trains too but would much rather fly any day!

– *Brett*:

Part of why I love train travel is comfort. It is so much easier to just get up and walk around when you need to while on a train, something that is usually much more difficult to do on a bus or airplane. And on longer train rides, you can always just wander over to a dining car or snack car and sit down at a table, relax, pull out a deck of cards, etc. Much easier and more interesting ways to pass the time than staring in the dark at a tiny television screen, if you're lucky enough to have one.

– Jo (*The Blond*):

I love train travel! I remember when I was young and we used to go to visit my aunties living at the other end of the country. The train journey took over a day and I was so excited about the bunk beds and all the games we played during the trip. Such an adventure! Maybe that's why I love travelling so much.

b) Whose point of view is similar to yours? Why?

c) Speak about your most exciting experience of train ride. When was it? Where did you go? What did you like/dislike about the train / compartment / company / guard / food?

d) Share your opinion concerning travelling by train in Ukraine. Compare it to that in European countries (use your own experience or the experience of other people). Give reasons.

e) Write your own post to this forum. Express your opinion concerning train travels.*

45.* *a) Read and translate the following text. Consult the dictionary if necessary.*

5 Reasons You Should Travel by Train Ride the rails and reduce your carbon emissions

The train, as a method of travel, has a lot stacked against it. It takes substantially longer than a plane ride. Locomotives wobble like gelatin on a trampoline. Plus, some passenger train companies have gotten a needlessly bad rap. Trains, however, are better for the environment than planes or driving alone. Here are five reasons to ride the rails.

1. The environment. Riding a train is considerably better than riding a plane as far as the environment is concerned. It is also a form of mass transportation. A group of people traveling together significantly lowers their overall carbon footprint. If every person on the train was driving their own car, it would be bad news for the climate.

2. The scenery. I traveled by train from Omaha, Nebraska to Bakersfield, California. The trip took three days. In that time, we passed through the Rocky Mountains, Salt Lake City, Reno and Sacramento. I saw wildlife-deer, wolves, eagles from the observation car. We went through caves that had been bored into the mountainside. We followed the Colorado River out of Grand Junction, Colorado. People waved at us as they fished.

3. The people. When you travel by train over a long distance, you get to know your fellow passengers. The trains have a dining tradition. If you go the dining car during meal time, you have to eat with strangers. I met a nice couple from Denver and the woman who grew the first square tomato.

4. Relaxation. When you are on a train, you can't go anywhere. You can't do anything. You can't check your emails. You can't get any bills. No one wants you to help them move or give them a ride. My phone barely worked. All I could do was drink coffee, read books and sleep. It was heaven.

5. Price. The train is substantially cheaper than a plane ticket. If you eat on the train everyday, it may offset some of that savings, but if you pack some lunches – you have to do the dining car at least once – the train is a bargain.

b) Make up your own list of pros and cons of travelling by train (in writing). Motivate all the items in your list.*

46. Speak on:

- a) your last journey by train;
- b) the local railway station;
- c) your travel by train abroad;
- d) your idea of the future of railway travels.

47. a) Discuss the following:

- 1. A big railway station is the best place to spend a spare hour.
- 2. There is nothing like travelling by train.
- 3. The trains of the future – dreams and reality.
- 4. Long train trips are so exciting!
- 5. A talkative person in your compartment is the very thing you need to make your trip pleasant.
- 6. Travelling alone is not only boring, but dangerous.
- 7. Railway system is the best invention of the mankind.
- 8. It is difficult to travel by train if you have heavy luggage.

*48. * Act out the following situations:*

- 1. An English colleague of yours wants to go to Kyiv to take part in an exhibition. He/she asks you about trains to Kyiv. You've

been to Kyiv many times and give him/her all the necessary information.

2. You are on business in London. Soon you are going to return to your native country. You phone the railway-booking agency to inquire about the time-table and tickets.

3. You are on board the train Kyiv – Lviv. There is an Englishman/Englishwoman in your compartment. In an hour you are busy talking. Tell him/her about your native city/town/village so that he/she might be eager to visit it.

49. a) *Dramatize the following dialogue.*

At the Railroad Station

Samuel: I want a ticket to Springfield, Ohio. What is the fare, please?

Ticket agent: It's 6.80 dollars one-way – 11 dollars and 50 cents – return.

S: When does the next train leave?

T.a.: There is a train at 4:10. There's also another at 7:20 this evening.

S: They are both good trains, I suppose – through trains, I mean?

T.a.: The 4:10 is an express and makes only one stop in New Heaven. It arrives in Springfield at 9:30. The second is a local one and takes about an hour and a half longer.

S: Is there a dining car on both trains?

T.a.: There is a diner on the 4:10. The 7:20 has just a club car. They serve sandwiches and coffee, drinks, etc.

S: May I have a timetable, please? My wife is going to do considerable travelling during the next few weeks. By the way, what is the cost of a Pullman seat to Springfield?

T.a.: There's no Pullman on the 7:20 – just day coaches. The 4:10 has a Pullman, but I doubt whether there are any seats available on today's train – unless you have a reservation. Was your wife planning to leave today?

S: Not necessarily. She hasn't quite made up her mind whether to leave today or tomorrow. It just occurred to me, however, that it was rather a long trip and it might be more comfortable riding in the Pullman...

T.a.: There isn't a thing available for today, but there may be some last-minute cancellations. Anyway, a Pullman seat to Springfield will cost you 3 dollars and 20 cents in addition to the regular fare.

S: I guess, it's necessary to make a reservation beforehand.

T.a.: It's customary to make a reservation at least a day in advance; it's safer, as far as you can see.

S: I'd like to ask you something about travelling by sleeper if I'm not bothering you too much... Something my wife will definitely ask me about when I come home. The fact is that I don't know much about travelling by sleeper; I've never been in one in all my life...

T.a.: O.K., what is it, Sir?

S: I understand there are two types of berths – upper berths and lower ones. Is there much difference in cost?

T.a.: Actually, as they say, the lower berths are higher and the uppers are lower: a lower berth to Springfield will cost you 2 dollars more than an upper berth.

S: I see... Is there any other difference?

T.a.: Well, probably, in the morning, if you are in a lower berth, you get *up*, and if you are in an upper berth, you get *down*.

S: I suppose, the lower berth is more comfortable, isn't it? That's why it costs more, isn't it?

T.a.: Some people claim they prefer an upper berth. They say, they sleep better because there's less noise and disturbance from people passing up and down the aisle. I should say, it's a matter of taste and pocket-book.

S: Thanks a lot. You've been very helpful.

T.a.: Don't mention it. That's what we're here for. Will you take a ticket?

S: Maybe, later, after my wife makes up her mind as to the day of departure.

(from *Brush up Your Everyday English* by T. Venkel, A. Val)

b) Answer the questions.

1. What is the return ticket? 2. What is more expensive, a return ticket or two single tickets? 3. What is meant by a through train? 4. Which makes better time, a fast train or a local train? 5. What is a timetable? 6. Why is a Pullman seat more expensive than a seat on a regular day coach? 7. What, according to the ticket agent is the difference between an upper berth and a lower berth? 8. Which berth do you prefer when travelling by train? Why? 9. Is the lower berth more expensive than the upper one in Ukraine? Do you think it would

be reasonable to have different prices for upper and lower berths? Why?

50. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Поспішай, а то спізнишся на потяг. 2. Їм не доведеться робити пересадку, бо це прямий потяг. 3. Хоч вона приїхала на вокзал в останню хвилину, вона встигла на потяг. 4. О котрій годині за розкладом потяг прибуває до Києва? – Він буде в Києві о 8.30. 5. Ми завжди намагаємося купувати квитки в обидва кінці – це дуже зручно і набагато дешевше. 6. Скільки коштує дитячий квиток? – Для дітей від 6 до 14 років квиток коштує 75% вартості квитка для дорослих, а для дітей до 6 років – проїзд безкоштовний. 7. Дайте мені, будь-ласка один квиток до Львова. Бажано, щоб це було нижнє місце у вагоні для тих, хто не палить. 8. Ходімо на платформу, потяг уже прибув. Нехай носильник віднесе твій багаж до третього вагону. 9. Чи є у потязі вагон-ресторан? – Ні, у цьому потязі є лише буфет: вони пропонують чай, каву, соки, мінеральну воду, бутерброди, печиво і булочки. 10. Не кладіть мою валізу на верхню полицю. Краще я покладу її у багажний ящик під нижнім сидінням.

Vocabulary: Public Conveyances. Driving a Car

Introductory Reading

51. Read the text and find out the meaning of the target words (in bold type).

Public transport (US: **public transportation** or **public transit**) is a shared passenger transport such as **taxicab**, **car pooling** (sharing of car journeys so that more than one person travels in a car) or **hired buses** (not shared by strangers without private arrangement).

Public transport includes **buses**, **trolleybuses**, **trams** and **trains** (**rapid transit** like **metro/subways/undergrounds** etc.). Most public transport runs to a **scheduled timetable** with the most frequent services running to a **headway** (a measurement of the distance or time between vehicles in a transit system). **Share taxi** (typically smaller than buses and usually take passengers on a fixed or semi-fixed route without timetables) offers on-demand services in many parts of the world and some services will wait until the vehicle is full before it starts.

Community transport /(*US*) **paratransit** (an alternative mode of flexible passenger transportation (typically minibuses or share taxis) that does not follow fixed routes or schedules) is sometimes used in areas of low-demand and for people who need a door-to-door service.

Urban public transport may be provided by one or more private transport operators or by a transit authority. Public transport services are usually funded by government subsidies and fares charged to each passenger.

Buses are used on conventional roads to carry numerous passengers on shorter journeys. Buses operate with low capacity (i.e. compared with trams or trains), and can operate on conventional roads, with relatively inexpensive bus stops to serve passengers. Therefore buses are commonly used in smaller cities and towns and in rural areas. **Trolleybuses** are electric buses that employ overhead wires to get power. There are also **online electric vehicles** – buses that run on a conventional battery, but are recharged frequently at certain points via underground wires.

Commuter rail is part of an urban area's public transport; it provides faster services to outer suburbs and neighboring towns and villages. Trains stop at stations that are located to serve a smaller suburban or town center. The stations often being combined with **shuttle bus** (a form of transportation that travels regularly between two places) or **park and ride** systems (car parks with connections to public transport that allow **commuters** to leave their vehicles and transfer to public transport for the remainder of the journey to the city centre) at each station. Frequency may be up to several times per hour.

A **rapid transit/ underground / subway / elevated railway / metro / metropolitan railway** / (in London – **the Tube**)¹ system is a passenger transport system in an urban area with a high capacity and frequency, and separation from other traffic. Rapid transit systems are

¹ Each city's metro system has a "common name" that developed historically. London – "The Tube", from the tube-shaped deep level bored tunnels (also called "the Underground"); Paris – metro, full name "Métropolitain"; New York City – subway, because the main lines have significant underground sections; Chicago – "The L" – from *el*, because it is mostly *elevated*; Boston – "The T" – from MBTA, the Massachusetts Bay Transportation Authority; Washington, D.C. – metro; San Francisco – BART, short for: **Bay Area Rapid Transit**.

typically located either in underground tunnels or on elevated **viaducts** (a long bridgelike structure, typically a series of arches, carrying a road or railroad across a valley or other low ground) above street level. Service on rapid transit systems is provided on designated lines between stations using **electric multiple units** (electric train) on rail tracks. They are typically integrated with other public transport. Rapid transit is faster and has a higher capacity than trams or light rail, but is not as fast or as far-reaching as commuter rail. It is unchallenged in its ability to transport large amounts of people quickly over short distances with little land use.

Trams/streetcars are railborne vehicles that run in city streets. They have higher capacity than buses, but must follow dedicated infrastructure with rails and wires either above or below the track, limiting their flexibility. **Light rail** is a modern development and use of the tram, with dedicated right-of-way not shared with other traffic, often step-free access and increased speed.

(from: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Public_transport)

Essential Vocabulary*

A. Urban Transport. Car Driving

urban transport	міський транспорт
local/shuttle bus	приміський автобус
limited-stop bus	автобус-експрес
coach	туристичний, міжміський автобус
minibus	мікроавтобус
double-decker	двоповерховий автобус
land cruiser	автобус далекого слідування
fare	плата за проїзд
ticket/pass	одноразовий проїзний квиток
season ticket	проїзний абонемент
midget car/baby car	малолітражний автомобіль
estate car/van	фургон
lorry/(US)truck	вантажний автомобіль
traffic rules/motoring (traffic) regulations	правила дорожнього руху
international driving permit (driver's license)	права водія
traffic lights	світлофор
accident/car crash	автомобільна аварія

breakdown	поломка
have an accident/to meet with an accident	потрапити в аварію
carriageway/roadway	проїжджа частина
motorway/ highway	шосе
speed limit	обмеження швидкості
rush hour	година пік
traffic jam	затор на дорозі
car park/(US)parking lot	автостоянка
to pay a fine (to get a parking ticket)	платити штраф
petrol/(US)gasoline/gas	бензин
petrol (gas) station/filling station	автозаправка
car wash	автомийка
service station	станція технічного обслуговування
mechanic	автомеханік

B. Riding in a Taxi

taxi(cab) rank /(US) taxi stand	стоянка таксі
taximeter	лічильник, таксометр
Where can I get a taxi?	Де можна найняти таксі?
Do you have a taxi number?	Чи є у тебе номер служби таксі?
I'd like (to order) a taxi, please. – Sorry, there are none available at the moment. / It's on its way.	Я б хотів замовити таксі. – Вибачте, але вільних машин зараз немає./ Машина в дорозі.
How much would it cost to ...?	Скільки коштує доїхати до ... ?
Please switch the meter on. / Is the meter switched on?	Увімкніть, будь-ласка, лічильник (таксометр). / Чи увімкнений лічильник?
Could we stop at ...?	Чи не могли б ми зупинитися біля ...?
Do you mind if I open/close the window?	Ви не проти, якщо я відчиню/зачиню вікно?
How long will the journey take? – We are almost there.	Скільки туди їхати? – Ми майже приїхали.
How much is it?	Скільки з мене?
Have you got anything smaller? That's fine, keep the change.	У вас немає дрібніших грошей? Все гаразд, залишіть здачу собі.
Could I have a receipt, please?	Чи можу я отримати чек?
Could you wait for me here? /	Чи не могли б ви зачекати на мене

Could you pick me up here at ...?	тут? / Чи не могли б ви забрати мене звідси о ... годині?
-----------------------------------	---

C. Hiring a Car

I'd like to hire a car. – How long for? / For how many days?	Я б хотів винайняти машину. – Як надовго? / На скільки днів?
How much does it cost? – It's £40 a day with unlimited mileage.	Скільки це буде коштувати? – 40 фунтів на день без обмежень у відстані.
What type of car do you want – manual or automatic?	Який тип коробки передач ви бажаєте – ручний чи автоматичний?
Has this car got air conditioning / central locking / a CD player / child locks?	Чи є в машині кондиціонер / центральний замок / програвач компакт-дисків / «дитячі» замки?
Could I see your driving licence?	Покажіть ваші водійські права.
It has to be returned by 2pm on Saturday. / You have to bring it back with a full tank.	Машину треба повернути до 14.00 в суботу. / Ви повинні повернути автомобіль з повним баком.

D. Parts of the Car

boot (US) trunk	багажник
bonnet	капот
wheel	колесо
wing mirror	бокове дзеркало
rear view mirror	дзеркало заднього виду
dashboard	щиток управління
steering wheel	кермо
front / back / passenger seat	переднє / заднє / пасажирське сидіння
speedometer	спідометр
temperature gauge	індикатор температури
windscreen	вітрове скло
windscreen wiper	склоочисник, «двірник»
brakes; handbrake	гальма; ручне гальмо
clutch	зчеплення
accelerator: manual automatic	акселератор (газ): ручний, автоматичний
headlights / headlamps	фари

sidelights	підфарники
hazard lights	аварійна сигналізація
brake lights	стоп-сигнали
indicators	габаритні вогні
tyre	шина, покришка
number plate	номерний знак
aerial	антена
roof rack	багажник на даху автомобіля
engine	двигун
petrol / (US) gas tank; fuel tank	бензобак, паливний бак
spark plug	свічка запалювання
exhaust; exhaust pipe	вихлопні гази; вихлопна труба
gear box	коробка швидкостей
gear stick	перемикач швидкостей
radiator	радіатор
heater	підігрівач
seatbelt	пасок безпеки

E. Mechanical Problems

My car has broken down / won't start	Моя машина зламалася / не заводиться
We've run out of petrol (gas)	У нас закінчився бензин
The battery is flat	Акумулятор сів
Have you got any jump leads?	У вас є «крокодили» (електродоти для запуску двигуна від стороннього джерела)?
I've got a flat tyre.	У мене спущене колесо.
I've got a puncture.	Я проколов колесо.
The speedometer / fuel gauge... isn't working. / There's something wrong with ...	Спідометр / паливний датчик не працює. / Щось негаразд із ...
The car is losing oil.	В машині тече мастило.
Can you check the pressure in the tyres, please?	Можете перевірити тиск у колесах?

F. Signs you might see

Stop	Стоп
Give way	Поступитися дорогою
No entry	Проїзду немає
One way	Односторонній рух

Parking	Стоянка
No parking	Стоянка заборонена
No stopping	Не зупинятися
Vehicles will be clamped	Транспортні засоби будуть блоковані
Keep left	Притримуйтеся лівої сторони
Get in lane	Притримуйтеся смуги
Slow down	Скинути швидкість
No overtaking	Обгін заборонений
Low bridge	Низький міст
Level crossing	Залізничний переїзд
Bus lane	Автобусна смуга
No through road	Проїзду немає
Caution	Увага
Diversion	Об'їзд
Road closed	Дорога закрита
Roadworks	Дорожні роботи
Accident ahead	Попереду ДТП
Queue ahead	Попереду затор
Queues after next junction	Затор після наступного перехрестя
On tow	На буксирі
Don't drink and drive!	Випив – не сідай за кермо!

52. Match the words and their explanations.

1.	shuttle bus	a)	a passenger regularly going to the city and back by public transport
2.	light rail	b)	a form of transportation that travels regularly between two places
3.	paratransit	c)	an electric bus that employs overhead wires to get power
4.	tram	d)	a modern development and use of the tram, with dedicated right-of-way not shared with other traffic
5.	trolleybus	e)	a bus that runs on a conventional battery recharged at certain points
6.	park and ride	f)	an alternative mode of flexible passenger transportation that does not follow fixed routes or schedules
7.	commuter	g)	railborne vehicle that runs in city streets

8.	online electric vehicle	h)	sharing of car journeys so that more than one person travels in a car
9.	headway	i)	car parks with connections to public transport that allow commuters to leave their vehicles and transfer to public transport for the remainder of the journey to the city centre
10.	car pooling	j)	a measurement of the distance or time between vehicles in a transit system

53. Read and translate the following sentences into Ukrainian. Pay attention to the use of the words in bold type. Learn these words.

1. He **wrote** the car **off**. 2. The car was a **write-off**. 3. I **accelerated up** the hill. 4. The **accelerator** is on the right. 5. I **braked** when I saw the police car. 6. The **brake** is in the middle. 7. Jim **crashed** into a tree. 8. There was a car **crash** outside my house.

54. Fill in the blanks with the words from Data Bank (the first letter of each word has already been written).

Data Bank

to break down; to write off; to crash; to overtake; to accelerate; to brake; to pull over; to change gear; a mechanic; a speed limit; traffic lights; a driving license; a driving test; a traffic jam

1. Paul was driving too fast and **c**_____ into a tree. 2. If you **w**_____ **o**_____ your car, it means that is badly damaged in a crash that it cannot be repaired. 3. **T**_____ **l**_____ have three colours: red, yellow and green. 4. If your car **b**_____ **d**_____, you need to call a **m**_____. 5. Before you are allowed to drive you have to pass your **d**_____ **t**_____. 6. When you pass your driving test you receive your **d**_____ **l**_____. 7. The **s**_____ **l**_____ is the maximum speed you are allowed to drive at. 8. To **o**_____ means to go past a slower vehicle. 9. To **a**_____ means to make the car go faster. 10. To **b**_____ means to make the car go slower. 11. To **p**_____ **o**_____ means to make an unplanned stop, perhaps because you have a problem with your car. 12. In most

countries you c_____ g_____ with your right hand, but British cars are different and you have to use your left hand. 13. The roads were very busy and there was a t_____ j_____, where nothing moved at all.

(From: *Essential English* by Peter Watkins)

55. *What do we call:*

1) traffic at a standstill because of an accident, roadwork or when the roads are too busy; 2) outdoor car park; 3) underground railway; 4) car licensed to ply for hire and usually fitted with a meter; 5) signal controlling road traffic by coloured lights; 6) electric bus using a trolley wheel; 7) time each day when traffic is the heaviest; 8) refined petroleum used as a fuel in motor vehicles; 9) luggage compartment of a car; 10) license permitting one to drive a vehicle.

Grammar Practice

Mind! Some verbs have different meaning, depending on which grammatical patterns they are part of. Here are some common ones:

1. regret+ -ing – feel sorry about something in the past. For example: *She regrets leaving her husband.*

regret+ infinitive – feel sorry about something in the present. For example: *We regret to inform you that your application has not been successful.*

2. stop+ -ing – the *ing*-form is the action which stops. For example: *He stopped smoking.*

stop+infinitive – the infinitive gives the reason why another action was stopped. For example: *He stopped to smoke.*

3. try+ -ing – experiment by doing something. For example: *If you want to cook better cakes, try warming the oven first.*

try+infinitive – make an effort to do something difficult. For example: *I know it's difficult, but try to save some money each week.*

4. remember+ -ing – the action happens **before** the remembering. For example: *I remember leaving the night club.*

remember+infinitive – the action happens **after** the remembering. For example: *You will remember to post this letter, won't you?*

5. forget+ -ing – the action happens **before** the forgetting. For example: *I had forgotten going to the polyclinic until you told me about it.*

forget+infinitive – the action happens/doesn't happen after the forgetting. For example: *I'm sorry, I forgot to say 'thank you'.*

56. *Answer the questions:*

1. Peter stopped working for Alex last month. – *Does Peter work for Alex now?* _____

2. Peter stopped to talk to Alex. – *Could Peter be talking to Alex now?*

3. I remember driving home. – *Which action happened first, the driving or the remembering?*

4. She forgot to turn off the lights. – *Were the lights turned off?*

5. She forgot turning off the television. – *Was the television turned off? Did she remember performing the action?*

6. John tried talking to his boss about his advancement but it didn't help. – *Did John talk to his boss?*

7. John tried to talk to his boss, but he was too busy. – *Did John talk to his boss?*

8. She regrets deciding to study German at university. – *Is she deciding now or in the past?*

9. You'll remember to drive me to the airport at 10 o'clock, won't you? – *Which action happened first, the driving or the remembering?*

10. I regret to tell you bad news, but I have to... – *Are you telling bad news now or did you tell it in the past?*

57. *Put the verbs in brackets into the correct forms. Remember that sometimes a bare infinitive is required.*

1. They let us park motorcycles here but they won't allow us (park) cars. 2. Do you feel like (walk) there or shall we (take) a bus? – I'd rather (go) by bus. Besides, it'll take ages (get) there on foot. 3. All right. When would you like (start)? In a few minutes? – Oh, let's wait till it stops (rain); otherwise we'll get soaked (walk) to the bus station. 4. Would you children mind (keep) quiet for a moment? I'm trying (fill) in a form. – It's no use (ask) children (keep) quiet. They can't help (make) a noise. 5. Did you remember (lock) the car? – No, I didn't. I'd better (go) back and (do) it now. 6. Tom: I can't get my car (start) on cold mornings. Jack: Have you tried (fill) the radiator with hot water? That sometimes helps. 7. When I caught them (cheat) me, I stopped (buy) petrol there and started (deal) with your garage instead. 8. Jack: I don't mind (travel) by bus, but I hate (stand) in queues. Tom: I don't

care for (queue) either; and you waste so much time (wait) for buses. I think it's better (go) by tube, or taxi. 9. We stopped once (buy) petrol and then we stopped again (ask) someone the way. 10. We'd better (start) early. We don't want (risk) (get) caught in a traffic jam.

58. Fill in the blanks with the words from the box:

passengers; delayed; mechanic; flight; boot; bonnet; garage; check; run out; deckchair; train; galley; departure lounge; ferry

Yesterday John was supposed to take a __ (1) __ from London to Paris. He got up very early, put his luggage in the __ (2) __ of his car and tried to start the engine. It wouldn't start. John lifted the __ (3) __ but he couldn't see what the matter could be. He immediately called his local __ (4) __ to ask them to send a __ (5) __ at once. Fortunately, the garage had a man free and he was with John within ten minutes. He quickly saw what the matter was. "You've __ (6) __ of fuel", he said. John felt very foolish. "Why didn't I __ (7) __ everything last night?", he wondered. Despite all this, he got to the airport, checked in quite early and then went straight through to the __ (8) __ to read a newspaper while he waited. Soon he heard an announcement: "Passengers on Flight BA 282 to Paris are informed that all flights to and from Paris are __ (9) __ because of a heavy snowfall last night". "If only I had decided to go by __ (10) __", John thought. "It would probably have been quicker in the end and even if I sometimes feel sick on the __ (11) __ across the Channel, it can be quite pleasant sitting in a __ (12) __ on the deck, watching the seagulls and the other __ (13) __. The __ (14) __ on a ship seem to produce much better food than those on an aircraft too".

Speaking

59. a) How should one behave:

- crossing a busy street;
- preparing to drive in a foreign country;
- driving on the motorways.

b) Explain why it is important:

- for a foot passenger to obey the traffic rules;
- for the driver to observe the motoring regulations;
- for the driver to keep to the left in Britain and to the right in Ukraine.

60. a) Compare going by bus (minibus, share taxi, trolleybus) in your city with that described in a dialogue. What is the same (different)?

b) Speak about your going by bus (minibus, trolleybus):

– in the morning on week days;

– in the evenings:

– on rush hours;

– on days off;

b) How would you improve the system of urban transport if you were the mayor of your city? Exchange your opinions. Work in pairs.

Reading

Pre-Reading Activities

Answer the following questions:

1) Have you/your parents/your friends a car? Have you got a driver's licence? 2) What mode of transportation do you choose for everyday use? Why? 3) What do you like/dislike most in the local public transportation system? Why? 4) When you travel far, which transportation do you prefer? And for a short distance travel? Motivate your choice. 5) What are the reasons of traffic jams in your native city? What do you think could be done by local authorities to avoid traffic jams?

61. a) Read and translate the article. Consult the dictionary, if necessary.

To Go by Bus or to Drive the Car?

Private cars or public transport, which is better? This is a common ongoing debate. The answer to this question depends on the mindset of the person. While some think that the main reason of traffic jams are the private cars, some commuters think that public transport is not a better alternative. Hence, different people have different opinions and reactions when asked whether they would prefer their own cars or use mass transit. People have their right to choose the most comfortable ways of travelling suitable for them.

Many people, mostly of the upper class, thinks that private cars is better when it comes to transportation and this is why these days the number of people who use their own cars for commuting is increasing rapidly. People who are constantly on the go or do not have a lot of

time find traveling by private cars a better choice and have good reasons to support their choice as well. Firstly, they think that as far as public transit is involved, a lot of their precious time is wasted by waiting for a bus or train to arrive; hence the speed factor is crucial for them. According to them, they can directly arrive at their destination without having to stop on the way to pick other passengers, which is the case in public transit.

Another reason why people do not prefer to use public transportation is because they do not like to share space with strangers or because they don't like to stand in the bus or train. With their own cars or even cabs, a seat is always guaranteed. Let's take the example of buses, during rush hours it is highly difficult to find an empty seat and usually one is left grasping the hand bar or the seat in order to save one from being flung when the brakes are applied. This is highly uncomfortable and it is not very easy to maintain one's balance in a crammed bus. Instead, having your own car makes your life comfortable and luxurious. You don't have to crowd with other people. You will have your private zone in your own car.

However, driving your own car to work has a lot of disadvantages too. Very often drivers have problems with finding a parking space and they get nervous. Also, you have to spend quite a lot of money for maintenance of your car. The price of fuel is increasing continuously. Moreover, drivers are constantly in the stressful situation, as they should be focused on the road to avoid accidents. While the passengers on the train, plane or even bus can sleep, read, idly look through the window or do what they want, the driver cannot relax; he has to be careful all the time. Moreover, when driver is very tired and sleepy, he can be as dangerous on the road as drunk driver.

Conversely, taking public transportation increases your patience, as you have to wait for the bus, and teaches you discipline and accuracy, because you have to follow the time schedule. Your tolerance with the crowd increases because in mass transport you hardly ever travel individually. You are more relaxed, you have more time to think about other problems and the ways to solve them while you are waiting or sitting on the bus. Besides, going by public transport appears to be cheaper if compared with the money you have to spend daily to maintain your own car, fill fuel to your car, etc. Moreover, going by mass transit often appears to be faster than driving a private car because of traffic jams. Traffic jams

have become a great problem mostly due to excessive amount of private cars on the roads. While there are special reserved lanes for public transit, the private cars have to stand in lines for hours waiting for their turn to go. This means that public transport can be faster than private cars, especially during rush hours.

The next factor is the environmental protection. Even an elementary school kid knows that one should always walk for shorter distances or use public transport instead of private cars. Imagine a situation when all the people in a bus had used their own cars instead, that would be equivalent to seventy cars producing toxic fumes, exhaust gases and other waste products and polluting the environment instead of just one bus! Moreover, “green” buses have been introduced, which do not produce pollutants and are more compatible with the environment. Thus, the use of public transportation on a regular basis can help to decrease the daily amount of private cars on the roads. In its turn, it may help to solve the problem of traffic jams and air pollution.

So, going by public transport you will be more relaxed, save money to do other things, save the precious time of your life that you waste for nothing while standing in traffic jams, and have time to think about the ways to solve your personal problems. You will become more tolerant, communicative, disciplined and accurate. Finally you can help the world by reducing pollution. Thus, don't be pessimistic with it.

b) Express your opinion concerning the problems discussed in the text. Give your reasons.

c) Write an essay about your choice of better transportation. Motivate your position.*

62. Find in the text the English equivalents of the following words and word-combinations.

1) година пік; 2) екологічний автобус; 3) токсичні гази; 4) громадський транспорт; 5) вихлопні гази; 6) стояти в заторах; 7) розклад руху; 8) коли мова йде про транспорт; 9) окрема смуга дороги для громадського транспорту; 10) зосереджуватися на дорозі, щоб уникнути аварії.

63. Translate the following phrases into Ukrainian.

1) toxic fumes, exhaust gases and other waste products; 2) one is left grasping the hand bar or the seat; 3) due to excessive amount of private cars on the roads; 4) the money you have to spend daily to maintain your own car; 5) special reserved lanes for public transit; 6) the precious time of your life; 7) the mindset of the person; 8) to maintain one's balance in a crammed bus; 9) people who are constantly on the go; 10) during rush hours.

64. a) *Dramatise the following dialogue.*

Around the City

Bus driver: Stand back from the door, please. Let the passengers off first.

Mrs. Oldridge: How much is the fare, please?

B.d.: 12 cents. Move along to the rear of the bus, please. There are plenty of seats to the rear.

Mrs.O.: (*nervous*) Does this bus go up Riverside Drive?

B.d.: Take bus Number 5. That goes all along the drive. And this is Number 4.

Mrs.O.: But somebody told me that this was the right bus to take. My daughter lives in Riverside and I've come to see her. My son-in-law used to drive me from the airport before, but this time he pretended he was busy.

B.d.: This is not the right bus, Madam. You're holding up the rest of the passengers.

Mrs.O.: You needn't be so impolite. I only asked you a simple question.

B.d.: And I gave you the simple answer. I don't have time to enter into conversation with every passenger that gets on the bus. Look at the crowd waiting to get in.

Mrs.O.: Such manners! It's disgusting.

B.d.: I'm sorry, Madam. Keep moving everybody... Move along to the rear of the bus.

Mrs.O.: (*getting off*) You're lucky I'm not your wife. If I were, I'd give you a good dose of poison.

B.d.: And if I were your husband, I'd take it!

(*a few minutes later*)

Mrs.O.: Taxi! Taxi! (*Taxi draws up at curb, stops*) Will you help me with my bags?

Taxi driver: Certainly, I'll put them in the trunk, Madam.

Mrs.O.: I suppose they'll be perfectly safe there.

T.d.: Where are you going?

Mrs.O.: I want to go to 435 Riverside Drive. And, driver, please, drive very carefully. I'm a very nervous woman.

T.d.: Don't worry.

Mrs.O.: Incidentally, what is the fare to 435 Riverside Drive?

T.d.: It'll cost you around 12 dollars and a half.

Mrs.O.: Are you quite sure it won't be any more?

T.d.: It may cost you 10 or 15 cents more. I can't tell exactly. But whatever it is, it will show on the meter. Whenever we start out with a passenger we put the flag up and that starts the meter functioning. The meter registers the distance and shows the exact amount of the fare.

Mrs.O.: You must excuse my ignorance, driver. It's the first time I go by taxi here. At my town the fare is 3 dollars and a half and you can go anywhere you want in the radius of three miles. What are the taxi rates here?

T.d.: The rate here is 65 cents for each additional quarter of a mile. The rates went up a short time ago.

Mrs.O.: Heavens! Be careful, please. You almost hit the other car.

T.d.: Did you see him cut in right in front of me? What was I supposed to do?

Mrs.O.: Must you drive so fast? I'm sure you must be going at least 40 miles an hour.

T.d.: When the lights are with me, I naturally take the advantage of them, I can't hold up all the traffic.

Mrs.O.: I'm sure that I could never drive a car in this city. No wonder that my daughter Juliet hits every other telephone pole when she drives... and she is such a careful and experienced driver. She's been driving a car for many years... Look here! (*taps the driver on the shoulder*) I've got the picture of my daughter Juliet with me. See, this charming blonde is my daughter and that gloomy, ugly fellow is her husband...

T.d.: I say, Lady! Stop pushing me all the time, I'm watching the road and traffic and, besides, I don't care a straw for your family.

Mrs.O.: O.K., O.K., I guess, it makes you irritated to drive every day in so much traffic.

T.d.: Not really, Madam. Traffic has nothing to do with it.

Mrs.O.: Do you have many accidents?

T.d.: No, Madam.

Mrs.O.: I do hope we don't have an accident on the way.

T.d.: (*a little exasperated*) Listen, Lady! I don't want an accident any more than you do, but we might get in it if you don't stop talking. I just got out of the hospital a week ago and I have no desire to go back.

Mrs.O.: Oh, you were in the hospital? You, poor man! What was the matter? I suppose you were in a serious accident.

T.d.: (*determined to end conversation*) No, it was a mental case.

Mrs.O.: Good Gracious!!!

(from *Brush up Your Everyday English* by T. Venkel, A. Val)

b) Answer the following questions using the information from the dialogue and your own experience.

1. Do you often or seldom ride in taxis? Why (not)? 2. What are the ways to hire a taxicab in your native city? Which of them is the most widely used? Why? 3. Are there taxi ranks in your native city or do you hail a taxi everywhere you need? 4. What is the purpose of the meter in a taxi? 5. What are the taxi rates in you native city? 6. What is the purpose of traffic lights? 7. Which is more rapid, the bus or the underground? 8. What other means of public transportation are there in your native city? Which of them are the most popular? Why? 9. Do the buses in you city stop at every corner or only at specially marked stations? 10. Do you consider the job of a bus-driver easy or difficult? Why?

65. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Автомобіль був дуже пошкоджений після аварії. 2. Я ніколи не подорожую автобусом, якщо можу цього уникнути. 3. Тролейбуси їздять відповідно до розкладу, з інтервалом між рейсами 10-15 хвилин. 4. Я дуже люблю їздити на машині, але не на роботу. Вранці на дорозі такі затори, що я завжди спізнююся. 5. Водій тролейбуса попросив пасажирів не стояти в дверях і пройти назад по салону, бо вони заважати іншим пасажирам виходити. 6. Через велику кількість транспорту на дорогах громадський транспорт рухається не за графіком, тому часто доводиться довго чекати на автобус, тролейбус чи маршрутку. 7. У великих містах найбільш зручним видом громадського транспорту є метро. Підземні

електропоїзди не залежать від транспортних заторів і дуже швидко доставляють велику кількість пасажирів у найвіддаленіші куточки міста. 8. Через автомобільну аварію трамвай №6 поїхав по маршруту №9, тому я не знав, де саме мені слід вийти, щоби добратися до оперного театру. 9. Перед поїздкою у відпустку я заїхав на станцію технічного обслуговування, щоби перевірити справність машини, поміняти колеса і перевірити мастило. 10. Оскільки на дорозі було слизько, таксі приїхало в аеропорт на півгодини пізніше, і я мало не спізнився на літак.

66. a) *Dramatise the following dialogue. Consult the dictionary if necessary.*

At the Filling Station

Samuel: Fill it up, please.

Attendant: High-test or regular, Mr. Bradley?

S.: Regular, please. Why should I pay 3 cents a gallon extra for high-test gasoline when I really don't notice any difference?

A.: They say the high-test has a little more power and causes less carbon.

S.: I've tried both kinds many times and as to power, the regular gasoline seems to be just as good as the high-test. It's possible the high-test leaves less carbon, but I turn my car in every year or two anyway, so I'm never bothered by any carbon.

A.: Shall I check the oil?

S.: Yes, please. By the way, next week my wife and I are going down South for a month. So you might look at the battery too.

A.: The battery is full. As to the oil, it's O.K., so far. But you may come in tomorrow to have the car greased before the long trip.

S.: Sure, and you can change the oil at the same time.

A.: How about the tires? Do they need air? I may as well check them... Oh, I'm afraid, I'll have to fill them... (*fills the tires with air*) Well, here you are. I'll clean the windshield for you now and you'll be all set. That will be 3 dollars and ten cents, Mr. Bradley.

S.: You didn't check the air in the spare tire, did you? That's the tire you fixed for me about a fortnight ago – remember? It had a puncture in it – a slow leak. I want to be sure it's all right.

A.: Let me have the trunk key, I'll check it with tire gauge. It seems to be all right. Shall I give you the map so that you could choose the best route for your trip?

S.: Don't bother now. I'll come in again just before I leave and you can help me find the route with the best highways and mark it on the map.

A.: Certainly, Mr. Bradley. I'll be glad to. By the way, did you see the wreck down the road this morning?

S.: I saw a car lying more or less in the ditch there.

A.: A fellow skidded off the highway late last night during that rainstorm. He was doing about 60 miles an hour and apparently couldn't make the curve. He hit a tree.

S.: Was he hurt badly?

A.: They took him to the hospital, but they seem to think he'll be all right. The car is pretty smashed up. We've sent a tow-car down there this morning to pull the car out, but it's wrapped around that tree so tight that it took us a couple of hours to budge it.

S.: I'm lucky, my wife Juliet didn't come in here with me and didn't see that car. Though I drive very carefully, she's afraid of getting in the accident, so she would be grumbling all the time during the trip: "Be careful now! Watch out for that car ahead! The traffic lights are about to change! Don't drive so fast!"

A.: Can your wife drive a car?

S.: She's learning to...

A.: How long has she been learning?

S.: It'll be exactly ten years next July.

A.: (*smiling*) Women certainly don't seem to make very good drivers.

S.: I agree with you. I know that whenever I'm driving and see a woman going toward me in the opposite direction, I always make sure to give her at least half of the road.

A.: But how can you tell which half of the road she wants?

(from *Brush up Your Everyday English* by T. Venkel, A. Val)

b) Answer the following questions.

1. What is the price of a litre of gasoline in your city? Is it the same everywhere throughout your country? 2. How often should a car be greased (oil be changed)? 3. Why do we sometimes carry less air in the rear tires than in the front tires? 4. Where is the spare tire kept? 5. What is the difference between a puncture and a blowout? 6. Can you drive a car? Have you a driver's license? 7. What is the difference between the high-test and regular gasoline? 8. What is a tow-car and

what are its functions? 9. Why is it useful to consult the mechanic before a long ride by car? What should be necessarily checked in the car before the long drive? 10. Why do you need a spare tire?

67. Choose the correct answer:

1. The plane circled over the airport until the _____ was clear.
a) highway; b) landing; c) runway; d) terminal
2. Hold on firmly to your _____ otherwise you'll sink!
a) lifebelt; b) anchor; c) quay; d) ears
3. British Airways _____ the departure of Flight 222 to Warsaw.
a) advertise; b) advise; c) announce; d) notice
4. We saw ships from all over the world in the _____.
a) beach; b) shelter; c) harbour; d) airport
5. When you get to the airport, your luggage will have to be _____.
a) balanced; b) estimated; c) sealed; d) weighed
6. If you want a cheap air ticket you must _____ well in advance.
a) book ; b) buy; c) engage; d) reserve
7. The air hostess told the passengers to _____ their seat belts.
a) attach; b) fasten; c) fix; d) tie
8. The ship's captain and members of the _____ welcomed us on board.
a) cast; b) crew; c) staff; d) team
9. Please _____ from smoking until the plane is airborne.
a) exclude; b) resign; c) resist; d) restrain
10. We're going to _____ a cruise on the river next weekend.
a) go; b) drive; c) take; d) travel
11. Our _____ was delayed owing to bad weather conditions.
a) airway; b) flight; c) airline; d) runway
12. The passengers wait for their trains in the _____.
a) left luggage office; b) booking office; c) departure lounge; d) lost property office
13. The _____ from London to New York takes nine hours.
a) flying; b) cruise; c) passage; d) journey
14. Passengers travelling by long-distance trains are catered in a _____.
a) luggage vans; b) dining car; c) Pullman; d) non-smoker

15. The passengers amused themselves playing games on the upper _____ of the ship.
a) deck; b) dock; c) platform; d) floor
16. The plane will fly at a(n) _____ of 5 thousand feet.
a) height; b) distance; c) altitude; d) hill
17. Pan Am Flight 547 is arriving at 5.20 at _____ 21.
a) Door; b) Passage; c) Gate; d) Exit
18. The custom's officials check your luggage and ask you to fill in the _____.
a) postcard; b) application form; c) table; d) custom's declaration
19. People are carried in _____ trains.
a) mail; b) freight; c) refrigerator; d) passenger
20. If you carry too much luggage, the airline will charge an _____ baggage fee.
a) additional; b) excess; c) extra ; d) over

Unit 5.2.

Recreation. Vacations

Vocabulary: ways of recreation and holiday making

68. Read the words and definitions. Fill in the chart with Ukrainian equivalents of the words and learn the words:

resort/holiday resort/health resort)	place frequented for holidays or invigoration	<i>курорт</i>
spa	resort with curative mineral springs	
seaside	seacoast as a holiday resort	
beach	pebbly or sandy shore, esp. of the sea	
leave/vacation(s)/ holiday	fixed holiday period; leisure period for students	
excursion/outing	journey to some place and back made for pleasure	
hike/walking-tour/camping trip	long walk for pleasure, esp. in the country	
hitchhiking	travelling by free lift in passing vehicles	
rucksack/backpack	bag carried on the back esp. by hikers	
to backpack	to travel for quite a long time and very cheaply	
sight(s)	places of interest	
to go sightseeing	to visit interesting places	
holiday camp	place for holiday makers with facilities like restaurants, bars, swimming pools and lots of others on site	
camp site	place where you can pitch a tent or park a caravan	
tent	portable dwelling supported by poles and chords attached to pegs driven into the ground	

guesthouse	accommodation like a hotel but cheaper and with fewer services	
self-catering flat	flat which you rent, you cook for yourself	
youth hostel	cheap accommodation, mainly for young people, with, perhaps, ten or more people sleeping in bunk beds in one room	
time-share apartment	accommodation which one owns, say, a 26th part of and so has the right to stay there for 2 weeks every year	

69. Read the sentences and translate the words in bold type.

1. I'm afraid **camping out** isn't the right holiday for her, for she isn't strong enough. 2. He always spends his **holiday** at this healthful **summer resort** in the mountains. 3. It's a beautiful large forest but there are always a lot of **hikers** there. 4. It's natural for young people to want to see as much as possible, so sometimes students go to most unusual places for their **vacations**. 5. I'm not really fond of **sightseeing** or excursions. 6. She never goes to the **seaside** for a holiday, she prefers this **spa resort** instead. 7. Nick says he **did all the sights** of St. Petersburg in one day. 8. Peter's girlfriend who he wanted **to go hiking** with him, was to go to a health resort. 9. Fred, who likes nothing better than a comfortable hotel, refused to spend the summer in a **tent**. 10. The weather was terrible so we didn't **enjoy our holiday**.

Reading

70. Read and translate the texts into Ukrainian, then do the tasks.

Planning holidays

Everyone needs at least one holiday a year, so when you begin spending sleepless nights thinking about the sun and the sea, when you think longingly of the green countryside and forget the mosquitoes and the boredom, there's no doubt about it – you're ready for a holiday.

Even a weekend is better than nothing. You need to get away from all your usual routines and get some fresh air and a change of perspective.

You should also take occasional holidays without the family. Your beloved spouse and children can do very well without you for a limited time and, if they cannot, they must learn to. It will be good for them to realise how much you do for them during the rest of the year. It is necessary for children to realise at a very young age that they can do without their parents. It teaches them independence.

Go somewhere quiet, where the climate is pleasant and invigorating. For the first couple of days, rest and sleep as much as you can. If you are in the mountains, give yourself a day or two to get used to the altitude; by the sea, have a daily swim.

Do things the way they are done in the country you are staying and eat the local food. Get to know the natives and their customs. Do a little sightseeing, even if you do not like it. Always have a dictionary of the local language, and pick up a few words. It is a good idea to get to know the place as well as you can.

If you prefer complete solitude, take some books and catch up on your reading. Be sure to take the necessary clothes and equipment, but don't burden yourself with a mountain of luggage full of things you will never use. Dress simply and in accord with the climate. Bring whatever sporting equipment you plan to use.

The sun is good for some people, and very bad for others. Don't overdo it; your skin will turn to leather and age much faster if you get it too brown. Protective oils and creams are a very necessary part of your holiday equipment.

You should try and store up energy and vitality to see you through the winter months. Be willing to put up with small inconveniences, and don't allow yourself to be annoyed. Things will not be done in the way you do them; so much the better. Take note of the good, and pass over the bad in silence.

Try and learn something useful from your holiday. Bring back an unusual peasant recipe or a local pottery jug. Don't burden yourself with a camera unless you are a genuine enthusiast; you will be always looking through it instead of directly at what is around you. And don't indulge in that useless habit of sending holiday postcards – if you forget all about home, you will come back with far more interesting tales to tell.

b) Do the tasks:

1. Find statements in the text you agree with.
2. Find statements in the text you disagree with. Give your reasons for and against.
3. Use the underlined words in the sentences of your own.
4. Speak of your own experience in planning a holiday and spending one.
5. Render the text.

71. React to the following statements (as in the model). Explain why you think so.

Model: Some people like to spend their holiday **in the library reading** from morning till night. –

I don't think it's the right way to spend a holiday you must have some active rest during a holiday.

or *I believe it's a good way of spending a holiday. Some people enjoy reading books more than anything else.*

1) ... on the beach lying in the sun...; 2) ... on the river bank fishing...; 3) ... hiking in the countryside...; 4) ... sleeping, eating and watching TV...; 5) ... camping out; 6) ... climbing up the mountains ...; 7) ...working in the garden...; 8) ...hitchhiking around the country; 9) ... sailing the yacht ...; 10) ... going on excursions and doing sights ...

72. Answer the following questions:

1. Do you like camping out? Where do you usually go? 2. Have you ever spent your holiday in a tent? 3. Do you carry your things in a rucksack when you go to a holiday resort? 4. Why do some people carry a lot luggage with them when they go to a fashionable resort? 5. Some people go sightseeing the moment they come to a new place. Is that what you usually do? 6. What do you think is the best time for sightseeing? 7. Do you like the guide to explain the things to you when you do the sights? 8. Some people enjoy hiking or camping out on any weather. Do you think you can enjoy living in a tent in rainy weather? 9. What sort of holiday do you enjoy most? What are the things that make you enjoy it? 10. Have you ever tried hitchhiking? Is it popular in this country? Why (not)? 11. How can you explain the difference

between camping out and hiking? Which do you like more – camping or hiking? 12. Is camping popular with young people only or with older people as well? And what about hiking (bicycling; hitchhiking)? 13. What kind of holiday is most popular with elderly people? 14. What are the most popular resorts in this country (in Europe; in the world)? 15. There are people who like to spend their holiday on board a ship. What about you? 16. Are you usually free at the weekend, or do you have to do a lot of work or study? 17. How many weeks holiday from studies to you have every year? Is it enough? 18. Do you think people in this country have enough free time? 19. Where do you prefer to go for a really nice day off: to the country, the beach, the city? 20. What is the ideal weekend, as to you?

73. Divide the items from the box into the following groups.

your plane is delayed; the place you visit is lively and full of people; the water is too polluted to swim in; the hotel staff are rude and unhelpful; the food in the hotel is disgusting; there are views on the sea from your hotel room; there is no entertainment; the atmosphere is peaceful and relaxing; the weather is wet and windy; the weather is really hot; the windows of your hotel face the petrol station; there are no shops in the neighbourhood; the hotel is very close to the beach; there are lots of plastic cups, bottles and cans on the beach; there is no public transport to the city; the there is no air-conditioning in your room

Ideal holiday	Awful holiday	Not sure

74. *Discuss the following points:*

1. The best way of spending one's vacation.
2. Travelling as a way of spending one's holiday.
3. Your idea of a good fellow-traveller.
4. The best ways for both spending vacations and keeping fit.

Speaking

75. *What is your idea of a good holiday?*

a) Read the text below and then share your opinion with your fellow-students.

Different people do different things during their holiday. In summer some people, mostly women, will want to take a cottage near a river or at the seaside and spend hours on the beach. Others will go to a holiday resort and perhaps stay at a hotel because they don't want to have anything to do with landladies or have to do cooking during a holiday. They may be right. But many people have their own idea of how to spend a holiday – for example, hiking, riding on a bicycle or in a car, camping out and living in tents, going on tour to some foreign countries and do the sights, etc.

This is what these Englishmen say about their idea of a good holiday.

Peter: The best holiday I've ever had was a camping holiday. I think camping is a great thing. I've always loved the countryside and nature. I believe it's the sense of freedom camping gives that makes it so pleasant. Life in most towns gets more and more noisy. But even near big cities there are areas of beautiful and quiet countryside where there are few people. You can always put up a tent there. The weather of course is a problem as no one likes camping in heavy rain. But if the weather is fine nothing is better than a camping holiday.

John: I believe many people have the wrong idea about cycling and thus miss a lot. Riding a cycle you can cover great distances and enjoy the nature around you, for the speed is not too fast unlike that of a car. Unlike the car, the bicycle is silent so you can enjoy the birds singing in the sky and the crickets chirring in the grass... Don't believe people who say that cycling is a hard work. Actually it's the easiest and the most healthy way of becoming fit in the shortest possible time. Besides every uphill has its downhill...

Mary: My first skiing holiday was the best one I've ever had. Besides it's a good alternative to your annual summer holiday. The countryside is lovely in winter and the frosty air is so fresh! A skiing holiday is a healthy holiday for you become tempered and easily resist colds, the flu and other typical winter diseases. It's usual to travel in ski-clothes, so there is no need to carry much luggage.

Jenny: As for me there is nothing better for your holiday than to live in a cottage and work in the kitchen garden. I adore planting different vegetables and taking care of them: watering, mowing, digging, weeding. By the way, it's also a very healthy pastimes because you breathe fresh country air, eat plain peasant food with fresh fruit and vegetables grown by yourself. Of course it may seem a bit hard work but my cherries are the sweetest, my aubergines are the bluest, my cucumbers are the freshest and my flower-garden is the most beautiful in the village.

b) Write an essay about:

1) your favourite way of spending a holiday:

2) the best holiday you've ever had;

3) your dream-holiday.

76. a) Read the text and translate it into Ukrainian using a dictionary.

*September 20,
London*

Dear Mom,

I was very pleased to receive that lovely postcard from you and Dad. Actually it's the first time I've been so far from home for so long a time. I miss you ever so much.

I'm in London now; I've been here since last Tuesday. I can hardly say I'm having a good time here, Mom. In fact, I regret having accepted Madeline's invitation to spend my vacation in Europe. Of course, I "fell in love" with Parisian sidewalk cafes and adored art and architecture of Venice and Rome, gentle Italian sun and azure sea... But London... I wonder how Madeline can live here for so many years!

There's no denying the fact that London's museums, art galleries, theatres and architecture have no match in the world. I

admired its monuments, streets, parks, taxis, shops, and double-deckers. But the charm, majesty and magic of this wonderful city are completely destroyed by the weather. I began to hate this word, Mom. The word “weather” means “lovely weather” for the British and now I realise why. The trouble is that we hadn’t got any chance to enjoy this “weather” since we have come here. The whole country seems to be drowned in thick, abominable, yellowish, clammy, “pea-soup”, as they say, fog. In those rear days when the fog clears away, it usually drizzles or rains, or pours. Surprisingly, few people here take much notice of it. They carry umbrellas and wear raincoats almost every day and seem to be “armed to the teeth” and ready to meet even the nastiest weather. Madeline says they got used to it, besides, it’s autumn, and it’s normal. I don’t think it’s possible.

The most interesting thing is that my husband seems to enjoy every moment of his staying here. No matter what the weather is, he is happy and frisks like a kid. This drives me crazy! He says that he doesn’t care for rain or fog. Even the flood, hurricane or “stone-fall” can’t prevent him from sightseeing and walks around this marvellous city. The last weekend, the so-called picnic, was the crown of it all. Guess whose idea it was, Mom. You are right! It was Samuel who suggested that “we should enjoy English nature” and have a nice weekend camping out by the Thames. Oh, Mom! I can’t believe I was so stupid to agree. The first day of this great outdoors was almost fine (excluding several showers and a thunderstorm). But the night in the wet tent was indescribable. Sleep came in snatches between the bites of big cheeky mosquitoes, horseflies and midges. Our food was full of ants and I couldn’t eat anything. Moreover, the morning was chilly and foggy and my clothes were all damp. Foolishly I decided to walk to the river, but in that dense fog I couldn’t find the way back. So, I had to yell myself hoarse until Samuel came and took me back to the camp. The ending of this wonderful weekend was even better: the drizzle slightly turned to a downpour, so heavy and cold that our tent made a poor shelter for all of us. We all got soaked to the skin. When we were driving away from that campsite, the pea-size hailstones were battering the roof of the bus. Hot bath and a dry warm bed were my inmost dreams, Mom. But all the others seemed to enjoy the weekend so happy and merry they were.

Oh, Mommy, I'm tired of this leaden overcast sky and moisture. I'm looking forward to leaving this country and coming back to sunny California. There's no place like home. See you soon.

*Best regards
Yours, Juliet.*

(from *Brush up Your Everyday English* by T. Venkel, A. Val)

b) Has bad weather ever spoilt your holiday? Describe such an event from your own experience (7-10 sentences in writing)

***Vocabulary: Hotels**

hotel accommodation/room/suite	готельний номер
single room	одномісний номер
double room	двомісний номер
triple room	номер на трьох
en-suite bathroom	ванна в номері (суміжна зі спальнею)
B&B (<i>abbreviation of bed and breakfast</i>)	ночівля і сніданок
full board (registration)	повний пансіон (з оплатою за 3-разове харчування)
half board (registration)	номер з оплатою за одноразове харчування (зазвичай, сніданок)
reservation	бронювання
to book a room/to reserve a room	бронювати номер
vacancy	вільне місце
fire escape	пожежний вихід
wake-up call	дзвінок (щоби розбудити клієнта)
room service	обслуговування номерів
chambermaid	покоївка
housekeeper	економка
hotel lobby	фойє
to register / (US) to check in	зареєструватися (перед заселенням)
to sign out / (US) to check out	виїхати з готелю

to pay the bill	оплатити рахунок
receptionist	адміністратор готелю
manager	менеджер
hall porter	швейцар
laundry	пральня
swimming pool; sauna	басейн, сауна

77. Read and translate the sentences into Ukrainian. Pay attention to the use of the words in bold type.

1. I'd like **to book** a single/double room with **a cot**¹. 2. I'd like a room with a shower, a colour TV, and a view of the sea. 3. What time do you **serve** breakfast? 4. Am I too late for dinner / to get something to eat? 5. Is service **included**? 6. Could I have a call at 7.30, please? 7. Could we have dinner in our room, please? 8. Sorry to bother you, but... I'm afraid there's something wrong with the **teasmade**², could you have a look at it? 9. I'd like **to make a call** to New Zealand, please. 10. What time do you like rooms **to be vacated** by?

78. Read and translate the following useful tips concerning hotels. (Consult the dictionary).

A. What to Do at the Hotel

When travelling, people almost always stay at hotels. It is advisable, therefore, to remember the following:

1. The first thing to do is to book a room in advance either by letter, telephone or telegram. Otherwise you may arrive at the hotel and be told that there are no rooms.

2. On arrival at the hotel go to the reception desk in the lobby and confirm your reservation. The clerk will then give you a registration form to fill in and sign (the form is filled in block letters). In smaller hotels you simply sign the visitor's book and give your permanent address.

3. At large hotels you may ask for any service by telephone. You tell the operator if you wish to be called at a certain time, you call room service when you want a meal or drinks sent up to your room,

¹ a) a cradle; b) a folding-bed

² tea-making machine

valet or maid service if you need something (a suit or dress) cleaned or pressed.

4. Let the hotel management know well in advance the day and time of your departure.

B. What Not to Do at the Hotel

Home is where the heart is, but your hotel is a place where you should definitely use your head. We do not aim to strike fear into the hearts of happy-go-lucky vacationers. But every hotel guest should be armed with awareness of his or her surroundings. Hotel hazards, from falling windows to sky-high hidden fees, lurk beyond the lobby. And a bit of prevention can stop something distressful from ruining your trip. Below are some things you shouldn't do at your hotel.

1. Don't lean on the window. Assorted tales of unsafe hotel windows have been known to appear in the news. We don't have any statistics on raining hotel windows or deaths due to unsound panes of glass, but a thorough Google News search of "hotel window fall" turns up enough results to verify the theory that one shouldn't lean on the hotel window. Ever! This rule applies at any high-rise building, but it's especially pressing in a place with a free minibar.

2. Don't drink from the glassware. To the cautious guest, a hotel is a hotbed of microorganisms left behind by their previous "hosts" (other travellers). The remote, the bedspread and the light switches are likely to locate the causative germs. There's one part of the hotel room of which even less-careful travellers should be suspicious: the glasses. After all, they touch your mouth. It's the law in some hotels that hotel room glasses and cups must be sanitized. In most hotels, however, there's no guarantee that your room glasses and mugs aren't simply rinsed off under the tap. An easy way to deal with this problem is by running the glasses under hot water for a few minutes.

3. Don't reveal your room number. There's one simple tip to which all guests, especially women and those travelling alone, should adhere: Don't let the front desk attendant publicize your room number. If he or she announces it out loud when giving you your key, ask for a different room. Anyone standing near the front desk in the lobby – including criminals – can learn exactly where you're spending the night if the attendant sounds off your room number.

4. Don't ignore the reviews. Some of the hotel horror stories we hear make our hair stand on end. (Think phrases like "dirty carpet,"

"red spots on the wall" and "multiple large cockroaches." Eek!) Sure, sometimes this sort of thing is just bad luck. But how many of these problems could have been avoided by checking out reviews ahead of time? Read a few reviews and it becomes clear that, for most guests, a filthy property's budget price did not make up for its supply of bed bugs or cockroaches.

b) Answer the following questions.

1. Why is it advisable to book a room in advance? 2. How can one reserve a room? 3. How does one confirm a reservation? 4. What does a visitor fill in on arrival at a hotel? 5. Why must the form be written out in block letters? 6. Who and when must you tell about your departure? 7. What does "room service" mean? What kind of service may you ask for by telephone at large hotels? 8. What kind of hotel room is en suite? 9. What services are included if one reserves full board (half board)? 10. When should one check in a hotel? 11. Why do people have to inform the hotel management about the day of departure in advance? 12. What is the difference between a hotel and a motel?

Speaking

79. a) *You are going away for a couple of days and need to make a list of what to take with you (10 items). Think about how to explain why you need these things. Work in pairs.*

b) *Work in groups. Tell your partners what you are going to take with you and let them guess what kind of a trip you are planning for.*

Writing

80. *Write a short story using the suggested words and word combinations.*

GOING ON A TRIP

Words for reference: to fix the time; to go (get) by air (boat, train); a date; to leave for; to find out; to learn; to get tickets; an entry (exit) visa; to go through the customs; to stay at a hotel; a comfortable room; a manager; a receptionist; a reception desk; (un)favourable weather conditions; to get acquainted; to make friends; to go (fly) back; to enjoy the trip (stay, visit); to take pictures; to travel about the country; to find the trip interesting (pleasant, useful); to get tired.

81. Read and translate the following quotes, then comment on them.

The time to enjoy a European tour is about three weeks after you unpack. – *George Ade*.

I am leaving the town to the invaders: increasingly numerous, mediocre, dirty, badly behaved, shameless tourists. – *Brigitte Bardot*.

The traveler sees what he sees, the tourist see what he has come to see. – *Gilbert K. Chesterton*.

The routines of tourism are even more monotonous than those of daily life. – *Mason Cooley*.

Tourism is the march of stupidity. You're expected to be stupid. The entire mechanism of the host country is geared to travelers acting stupidly. You walk around dazed, squinting into fold-out maps. You don't know how to talk to people, how to get anywhere, what the money means, what time it is, what to eat or how to eat it. Being stupid is the pattern, the level and the norm. You can exist on this level for weeks and months without reprimand or dire consequence. [...] You are an army of fools, wearing bright polyesters, riding camels, taking pictures of each other, haggard, dysenteric, thirsty. There is nothing to think about but the next shapeless event. – *Don Delillo*.

Worth seeing? Yes; but not worth going to see. – *Samuel Johnson*.

As for pictures and museums, that don't trouble me. The worst of going abroad is that you've always got to look at things of that sort. To have to do it at home would be beyond a joke. – *Margaret Oliphant*.

In the middle ages people were tourists because of their religion, whereas now they are tourists because tourism is their religion. – *Robert Runcie*.

If it's tourist season, why can't we kill them? – *Unknown*.

When overseas you learn more about your own country, than you do the place you're visiting. – *Clint Borgen*.

82. Translate into English.

1. Він закінчив роботу до кінця липня. Це дозволило йому поїхати у відпустку в серпні. 2. Цього літа я не поїду на море у відпустку. Я хочу поїхати у якесь спокійне місце. 3. Він часто проводить вихідні та відпустку, катаючись на велосипеді. 4. Він показав нам новий спосіб встановлення намету, але ми встановили його по-старому. 5. Лежати на сонці на пляжі зранку до вечора не лише нудно, але й шкідливо для здоров'я. 6. Подорожування автостопом –

найдешевший спосіб побачити багато гарних місць і познайомитися з цікавими людьми. 7. Коли він був у відпустці в Ялті, він плавав цілий місяць на яхті і рибалив. 8. Я люблю відпочивати на морському узбережжі, або на модних курортах. 9. Коли я буваю у відпустці на морі, я уникаю морських прогулянок на катері чи яхті, тому що я страждаю на "морську хворобу". 10. Він обожнює їздити на екскурсії, оглядати цікаві місця, музеї та церкви.

83. **Render the text in English.*

Етикет мандрівника

Вирушаючи в подорож, особливо за кордон, пам'ятаємо, що «закордон» починається вже в дорозі. Саме там вам доведеться зустріти перших іноземців, тож намагайтесь показати себе з найкращого боку, спілкуючись із ними та першими офіційними представниками – чиновниками імміграційної служби, адже ви у даному випадку представляєте свою країну.

Літак. У літаку є щонайменше три класи: перший, бізнес і туристичний. Вони відрізняються комфортністю, кількістю послуг і, звичайно, вартістю квитків. Іноді в літаках західних авіакомпаній місця не нумеруються, в квитку вказується лише салон. Це означає, що всі місця в цьому салоні рівноцінні, тому не варто гасати по салону, вишукуючи найзручніше місце.

Чого ми не робимо в літаку:

- не волаємо від захвату та здивування, коли літак піднімається в повітря (навіть якщо подорожуємо літаком уперше в житті!) та від страху, коли раптом він потрапляє у повітряну яму чи здригається;

- не займаємо чужого місця на підставі того, що там можна дивитися в ілюмінатор;

- не розповідаємо сусідам жахливих історій про авіакатастрофи, повсякчас питаючи у бортпроводниці, чи не заглох, бува, двигун;

- не демонструємо дурну відвагу, відмовляючись пристебнути реміні безпеки на зльоті чи посадці;

- не соромимося вчасно скористатися гігієнічним пакетом, коли раптом стало погано, адже це може принести неприємності і вам, і всім навколо;

- не блукаємо по салону без особливої потреби;
- залишаючи літак, не забуваємо подякувати стюардесі за турботу про вас під час польоту.

Потяг. Вирушаючи в дорогу, слід обов'язково звернути увагу на свій зовнішній вигляд. Для потягу варто вдягтися в легкий зручний костюм. Що зручнішим та акуратнішим він буде, то рідше доведеться переодягатися, щоби вийти на зупинці чи піти до вагону-ресторану. Брудне взуття та пом'ятий одяг неприпустимі.

На вокзал краще прийти за 15-20 хвилин до відходу потяга. Зайшовши до купе і побачивши там своїх майбутніх попутників, вітаємося першими й називаємо номер свого місця. Літнім людям і жінкам допомагаємо розмістити багаж і дістати матрац. Не обов'язково знайомитися з сусідами, проте не слід забувати про такі фрази, як «Ви дозволите?», «Ви не заперечуєте?», коли хочете відчинити вікно, вимкнути світло чи ввімкнути радіо. Якщо вас попросять, поступіться жінці, літній людині або дитині вашим нижнім місцем. Якщо ж місцем поступатися не довелося, все-таки не забувайте про пасажирів із верхніх полиць – не всі бажають лежати протягом довгих годин подорожі, не кажучи вже про те, що поїсти на верхній полиці можна лише після тривалих спеціальних тренувань. Дві нижні полиці призначені для всіх пасажирів купе, не кажучи вже про столик, особливі полицьки та ящик для багажу. Вранці та ввечері чоловіки повинні вийти з купе, даючи змогу жінкам переодягтися. У багатьох країнах про це подумали заздалегідь, продаючи квитки на спальні місця з урахуванням статі пасажирів. Але там виникають інші складні ситуації: так, чоловік і дружина повинні або оплатити все купе, або їхати окремо.

Чого ми не робимо в потязі:

- не палимо у вагоні для тих, хто не палить (навіть у тамбурі чи в туалеті);
- не ходимо безперестанку туди-сюди по проході повз купе;
- не беремо з собою в потяг екзотичну їжу з сильним запахом (наприклад, часнику) – її аромат може бути приємним для вас, але, можливо, дратуватиме ваших попутників;
- не викидаємо залишки їжі, порожню тару та обгортки у вікно й не залишаємо їх на столику;

- не беремо собі «на пам'ять» з потяга шматочки мила, попільничку, рушник тощо, не псуємо майно та білизну;
- не займаємо надовго туалет;
- не набридаємо попутникам постійними зауваженнями про холод/задуху/сморід у вагоні, будьмо стримані;
- не втягуємо попутників проти їх волі у бесіду, не ображаємося на них за небажання підтримати розмову чи розділити з вами обід, адже кожен має право на поганий настрій;
- не балакаємо безперестанку про свій сімейний стан, хвороби родичів, успіхи дітей у навчанні тощо, а якщо попутники надокучають вам такими розмовами, делікатно вибачтеся і вийдіть у коридор чи тамбур;
- вирушаючи у подорож з кимось із родичів чи друзів, не ігноруємо інших сусідів у купе, спілкуючись лише між собою.

Extended Reading

(1) Packing and repacking

(by Jerome K. Jerome)

I ... started the packing. It seemed a longer job than I had thought it was going to be; but I got the bag finished at last, and I sat on it and strapped it.

“Ain’t you going to put the boots in?” said Harris, and I looked round, and found I had forgotten them. That’s just like Harris. He couldn’t have said a word until I’d got the bag shut and strapped, of course. And George laughed – one of those irritating, senseless, chuckle-headed, crack-jawed laughs of his. They do make me so wild.

I opened the bag and packed the boots in; and then, just as I was going to close it, a horrible idea occurred to me. Had I packed my tooth-brush? I don’t know how it is, but I never know whether I’ve packed my tooth-brush.

My tooth-brush is a thing that haunts me when I’m travelling, and makes my life a misery. I dream that I haven’t packed it, and wake up in a cold perspiration, and get out of bed and hunt for it. And, in the morning, I pack it before I have used it, and have to unpack again to get it, and it is always the last thing I turn out of the bag; and then I repack and forget it, and have to rush upstairs for it at the last moment and carry it to the railway station, wrapped up in my pocket handkerchief.

Of course I had to turn every mortal thing out now, and, of course, I could not find it. I rummaged the things up into much the same state that they must have been before the world was created, and when chaos reigned. Of course, I found George's and Harris's eighteen times over, but I couldn't find my own. I put the things back one by one, and held everything up and shook it. Then I found it inside a boot. I repacked once more.

When I finished, George asked if the soap was in. I said I didn't care a hang whether the soap was in or whether it wasn't; and I slammed the bag and strapped it, and found that I had packed my tobacco-pouch in it, and had to re-open it. It got shut up finally at 10.5 p. m., and then there remained the hampers to do. Harris said that we should be wanting to start in less than twelve hours' time, and thought that he and George had better do the rest; and I agreed and sat down, and they had a go.

They began in a light-hearted spirit, evidently intending to show me how to do it. I made no comment; I only waited. When George is hanged Harris will be the worst packer in this world; and I looked at the piles of plates and kettles, and bottles, and jars, and pies, and stoves, and cakes, and tomatoes, etc., and felt that the thing would soon become exciting.

(2) How to be "Streetwise" – and Safe

With traffic congestion in big cities getting worse from year to year walking may soon become the surest way of getting places. But even the foot passenger has to obey the traffic rules if he wants to get there safe and sound.

Here are some things to remember.

1. Obey the traffic lights. Don't cross before the light turns green or the signal reads "walk".
2. Don't cross streets in the middle of a block.
3. Don't walk on roadways. There's pavement for pedestrians.

If you are out to hail a taxi cruising the streets look out for the lighted roof sign "taxi". You may find it easier to pick up a cab at the taxi stand (rank). Passengers pay by the meter. In the United States there is an additional toll for bridges and tunnels on the way.

Those of you who will have to drive a car while travelling abroad should start by getting an international driving permit (licence)

back home. Always keep your driving licence and registration papers on you. Remember that motoring regulations (Highway Code) are strictly enforced. In the United States, as in Ukraine, you drive on the right. In Britain, Japan and several other countries you must keep to the left.

Parking in many cities can be a problem. Remember there are such things as “No Parking” signs, parking metres, and parking lots. When parking your car never take up more space than necessary – stay within the lines of parking spaces – and do not park too close to the other cars. If you violate the parking laws you are sure to find a “ticket” pasted on your windscreen. This is a summons to appear in court. You may either send payment for your fine by mail or pay your fine in person in court.

The car should be kept in good running condition to avoid breakdowns. Plan your route in advance, particularly on long or unfamiliar trips. Have enough petrol and money to get there and back. You are able to protect yourself and reduce the opportunity for street criminals to attack you. Here are simple rules for you to keep safe on the road.

1. Drive with all car doors locked. Keep windows rolled up whenever possible.
2. Be careful when picking hitchhikers.
3. If you see another motorist in trouble, signal that you will get help and then go to a telephone and call police.
4. If your car breaks down, raise the hood, use flares, or tie a white cloth to the door handle. Stay in the locked car. When someone stops ask them to phone for help.
5. Park in well-lighted areas that will still be well-lighted when you return. Lock your car doors.

If you are being followed while driving, drive to the nearest police or fire station, open gas station or other business, or well-lighted residence where you can safely call police. Try to get the car's license number and description. If no safe areas are near, honk the horn repeatedly and turn on your emergency flashers.

(3)

Since the first railway in our country was opened, people have covered millions of kilometres travelling from one part of the country to another by train. Travelling by train is slower than by plane, but it has its advantages. Modern trains have very comfortable seats in all

passenger carriages and there are sleeping-cars and dining-cars that make even the longest journey enjoyable. It's much more convenient to travel by an express train, because it does not stop at small stations and it takes you less time to get to your destination. Long-distance trains are also fast trains. Local, commuter, and stopping or slow trains make the stops and you can get on or off the train even at a very small station.

Goods are carried in freight trains and mail-vans carry mail. For longer distances and particularly for bulky products the railway is known to have a decided advantage. The cost of transportation is generally dependent upon distance and the special points and at terminals. Rates do not increase in proportion to distance, but they are nevertheless greater for longer hauls. Livestock shippers are allowed many privileges. Laws require livestock to be unloaded, to be fed, watered and restored, usually at 28-hour intervals. These privileges are most important in the shipment of farm products but they apply to other raw materials as well. Thus, logs are sometimes sawed into lumber, graded and stored at transit points. Some minerals are refined at transit points. Refrigerator cars make it possible to carry perishable products such as fruits, vegetables, meat and fish from distant places of production to consuming areas. A further use for refrigerator cars is found in winter when goods are carried, which would freeze in ordinary box cars. Heater cars have also been developed and special cars have been introduced for carrying certain products, such as livestock and petroleum. Special trains carry fresh milk and cream to large cities. There are also fast freight lines for perishable foods and livestock their purpose being to combine the refrigerator cars in special trains to run at top speed to central markets.

The building of the railways is often difficult and costly work. It is not hard to build railways in open level country but they must be built in mountainous countries, they must cross high hills and deep valleys as well as wide rivers. Sometimes the railway builders carry their track beneath the mountain by means of long tunnels bored and blasted through rocks and earth. Some of our railroad bridges rest on stones or concrete piers, some are built in the shape of huge arches stretching from one bank of the river to the other, some bridges are supported by great steel cables swung between tall towers built on each side of the stream.

One of the first things a foreigner notices about British railways is the platforms. They are higher than in most parts of the world. The platform is almost on a level with the floor of the carriages. You do not, therefore, have to climb up into a railway carriage in Britain. This makes it a little easier to get in and out of the carriage with your luggage.

The trains that go to and from London (called up-trains and down trains) are very crowded at the times when people are travelling to work, since about a million people travel to London to work each day. There are cheap tickets after a certain time of the day, usually about 9.30 when everyone has gone to work. These are called cheap day return tickets. It is often nearly fifty per cent cheaper to travel to London after 9.30 than before this time.

On many fast trains to London there is a dining-car in which you can buy lunch, dinner or coffee. On others there is a buffet at which it is possible to buy snacks and drinks. Sometimes a waiter from the dining-car brings round cups of coffee to the passengers.

There are only two classes in Britain – first and second. A first-class ticket costs fifty per cent more than a second-class ticket. On long journeys, there is a ticket inspector, who visits every passenger to see if he has the right ticket and is not travelling in the wrong class.

In England train passengers seldom converse with their fellow-travellers even on a long journey – this is more a national custom than a matter of etiquette.

When the passenger reaches the end of his journey and leaves the train, he has to give his ticket to the ticket collector at the exit before he can leave the station. If he has luggage and wants someone to carry it for him to a waiting car or taxi, he must ask a porter. The porter does not make a charge for this service, but he expects a tip.

(4) Advantages of cheese as a travelling companion

I remember a friend of mine, buying a couple of cheeses at Liverpool. Splendid cheeses they were, ripe and mellow, and with a two hundred horse-power scent about them that might have been warranted to carry three miles, and knock a man over at two hundred yards. I was in Liverpool at the time, and my friend said that if I didn't mind he would get me to take them back with me to London, as he should not be coming up for a day or two himself, and he did not think the cheeses ought to be kept much longer.

“Oh, with pleasure, dear boy,” I replied, “with pleasure.” [...]

I took my ticket, and marched proudly up the platform, with my cheeses, the people falling back respectfully on either side. The train was crowded, and I had to get into a carriage where there were already seven other people. One crusty old gentleman objected, but I got in, notwithstanding; and, putting my cheeses upon the rack, squeezed down with a pleasant smile, and said it was a warm day.

A few moments passed, and then the old gentleman began to fidget.

“Very close in here,” he said.

“Quite oppressive,” said the man next him.

And then they both began sniffing, and, at the third sniff, they caught it right on the chest, and rose up without another word and went out. And then a stout lady got up, and said it was disgraceful that a respectable married woman should be harried about in this way, and gathered up a bag and eight parcels and went. The remaining four passengers sat on for a while, until a solemn-looking man in the corner, who, from his dress and general appearance, seemed to belong to the undertaker class, said it put him in mind of dead baby; and the other three passengers tried to get out of the door at the same time, and hurt themselves.

[...] From Crewe I had the compartment to myself, though the train was crowded. As we drew up at the different stations, the people, seeing my empty carriage, would rush for it. “Here y’ are, Maria; come along, plenty of room.” “All right, Tom; we’ll get in here,” they would shout. And they would run along, carrying heavy bags, and fight round the door to get in first. And one would open the door and mount the steps, and stagger back into the arms of the man behind him; and they would all come and have a sniff, and then droop off and squeeze into other carriages, or pay the difference and go first.

From Euston, I took the cheeses down to my friend’s house. When his wife came into the room she smelt round for an instant. Then she said:

“What is it? Tell me the worst.”

I said:

“It’s cheeses. Tom bought them in Liverpool, and asked me to bring them up with me.”

And I added that I hoped she understood that it had nothing to do with me; and she said that she was sure of that, but that she would speak to Tom about it when he came back.

My friend was detained in Liverpool longer than he expected; and, three days later, as he hadn't returned home, his wife called on me. She said:

"What did Tom say about those cheeses?"

I replied that he had directed they were to be kept in a moist place, and that nobody was to touch them. She said:

"Nobody's likely to touch them. Had he smelt them?"

I thought he had, and added that he seemed greatly attached to them.

"You think he would be upset," she queried, "if I gave a man a sovereign to take them away and bury them?"

I answered that I thought he would never smile again.

An idea struck her. She said:

"Do you mind keeping them for him? Let me send them round to you."

"Madam," I replied, "for myself I like the smell of cheese, and the journey the other day with them from Liverpool I shall ever look back upon as a happy ending to a pleasant holiday. But, in this world, we must consider others. The lady under whose roof I have the honour of residing is a widow, and, for all I know, possibly an orphan too. She has a strong, I may say an eloquent, objection to being what she terms 'put upon.' The presence of your husband's cheeses in her house she would, I instinctively feel, regard as a 'put upon'; and it shall never be said that I put upon the widow and the orphan."

"Very well, then," said my friend's wife, rising, "all I have to say is, that I shall take the children and go to an hotel until those cheeses are eaten. I decline to live any longer in the same house with them."

[...] The hotel bill came to fifteen guineas; and my friend, after reckoning everything up, found that the cheeses had cost him eight-and-sixpence a pound. He said he dearly loved a bit of cheese, but it was beyond his means; so he determined to get rid of them. He threw them into the canal; but had to fish them out again, as the bargemen complained. They said it made them feel quite faint. And, after that, he took them one dark night and left them in the parish mortuary. But the coroner discovered them, and made a fearful fuss. He said it was a plot to deprive him of his living by waking up the corpses.

My friend got rid of them, at last, by taking them down to a sea-side town, and burying them on the beach. It gained the place quite a

reputation. Visitors said they had never noticed before how strong the air was, and weak-chested and consumptive people used to throng there for years afterwards.

(after Jerome K. Jerome)

Sample Vocabulary Test to Module 5

a) Write the words corresponding to the definitions given below:

- 1) public flying ground for use by airliners;
- 2) place to which a person or thing is going or is being sent to;
- 3) portable dwelling supported by poles and chords attached to pegs driven into the ground;
- 4) a boat carried on a ship for use in case the ship is in danger of sinking;
- 5) a bus with an upper compartment;
- 6) resort with curative mineral springs;
- 7) all the persons working on a ship or aircraft;
- 8) hotel reservation meaning that all the meals will be included;
- 9) going to ones destination with a short break in the journey in another place;
- 10) one of the separate divisions of a railway carriage;

b) Translate into English:

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 11) бюро знахідок; | 16) повітряна яма; |
| 12) автобус далекого слідування; | 17) курорт; |
| 13) подорожування автостопом; | 18) приміська електричка; |
| 14) морське узбережжя; | 19) затор на дорозі; |
| 15) багажник автомобіля; | 20) встановити намет. |

REFERENCE GRAMMAR

Артикль (The Article)

Артиклі: **a (an)** – неозначений; **the** – означений.

Вживання неозначеного артикля:

1) перед обчислюваними іменниками в однині, коли про них згадується вперше:

e.g.: I have **a** book (**an** English book).

2) перед обчислюваними іменниками в однині, якщо цей іменник є представником цілого класу речей (істот):

e.g.: **A** dog is **a** domestic animal.

3) з іменниками, що позначають професії:

e.g.: He is **a** doctor.

4) з певними числовими виразами: **a couple, a dozen, a score (20), a hundred, a thousand, a million, a lot of, a great many of, etc.**

5) у виразах, що позначають ціну, швидкість, відношення, час, тощо: **a penny, once a year, four times a day.**

6) в окличних реченнях перед обчислюваними іменниками: **What a day!**

What a beautiful picture! Such a pity!

Неозначений артикль не вживається з іменниками в множині, необчислюваними іменниками (що позначають речовини, матеріали, абстрактні поняття), з іменниками, що позначають власні назви.

Вживання означеного артикля:

1) з іменниками в однині та множині, обчислюваними та необчислюваними, про які в реченні подається особлива інформація, у відповідях на питання **Which?, What?, Whose?:**

e.g.: Where is the key? – Which key? – **The** key from this door.

2) перед іменниками, які згадуються повторно:

e.g.: When I entered the room I saw **a** man standing at the window. **The** man was very old.

3) перед іменниками, що позначають унікальні об'єкти: **the** earth, **the** sun, **the** moon, **the** world, **the** universe, **the** North Pole.

4) з іменниками, що виражають збірні політичні та соціальні поняття:

e.g.: **the** Labour Party, **the** working class.

5) з іменниками в однині, що представляють цілий клас предметів:

e.g.: **The** radio was invented by A. Popov.

З власними назвами.

THE вживається:

1) з назвами груп островів, гірських хребтів: **the** Caucasus; **the** British Isles.

(з назвами окремих озер, гір артикль не вживається: Mont Blanc, Kilimanjaro, Madagaskar)

2) з назвами морів, океанів, річок, озер, каналів: **the** Black Sea, **the** Thames, **the** Baikal, **the** Pacific Ocean, **the** English Channel

3) з назвами сторін світу: **the** North, **the** South, **the** East, **the** West (якщо це не напрямок руху: We travelled north.)

4) перед порядковими числівниками, найвищим ступенем порівняння прикметників та прислівників.

5) з назвами історичних подій та епох: **the** Renaissance; **the** Great Fire.

6) з назвами закладів, організацій, газет, журналів, готелів: **the** United Nations Organization, **the** Metropol Hotel, **the** Times, **the** Titanic.

7) із словами cinema, theatre, office, cathedral

THE не вживається:

– з назвати країн, міст, сіл, іменами людей, кличками тварин:

(Винятки: **the** Congo, **the** Netherlands, **the** Sudan, **the** Hague)

– у виразах to be at school, to go to school, to be at college, to leave school / college, to be in prison, to be put / sent in / to prison (якщо це не назва будівля, у якій розміщений даний заклад)

– у виразах to go to bed, to be in bed;

- із іменником town (як протиставлення country): e.g.: He doesn't like to stay in town in summer.

**Видо-часові форми англійського дієслова
(минулий час)**

PAST			
<p>-фіксовані події у минулому; -дії регулярні, послідовні у минулому; -з обставинами неозначеного часу, якщо в реченні є слова, які фіксують подію в минулому.</p> <p>V_{ed}; V₂</p> <p>Did ... V? ... didn't V.</p>	<p>-дія в розвитку, незавершена, що відбувалася у певний момент у минулому; -паралельні дії у минулому; -дія, що відбувалася у момент, коли відбулася якась інша дія; -дія, що відбувалася в обмежений період часу (коли необхідно підкреслити її тривалість)</p> <p>was/were V_{ing}</p> <p>Was I V_{ing}? They weren't V_{ing}.</p>	<p>-дія, що завершилася до певного моменту в минулому. Цей момент визначається: (1) обставиною з прийменником by; (2) іншою дією, яка відбулася раніше від дії, позначеної Past Perfect.</p> <p>had V_{ed}; V₃</p> <p>Had ... V_{ed} (V₃)? ... hadn't V_{ed} (V₃).</p>	<p>-дія, що почалася раніше іншої дії (вираженої Past Simple), тривала деякий час, або перервалася.</p> <p>had been V_{ing}</p> <p>Had ... been V_{ing}? ... hadn't been V_{ing}.</p>

Обставини часу			
-yesterday / two days ago / last year / in 1959 / питання з When? ; -today / this week / ever / never / yet; -every day / often / usually / at first / then / after.	-at 7 o'clock / at the moment / then; -while; -підрядні речення часу, з when ; – from... till... / all day long / the whole month (week, year)	(1) by ... o'clock / the 15 th of May / the end of the week; (2) before he came	(1) вказаний весь період дії до моменту мовлення: for 2 hours / weeks / the last two days / years, etc. (2) вказаний початковий момент дії: since 5 o'clock / yesterday / last week, etc.
e.g.: He <i>wrote</i> letters to his friends yesterday .	e.g.: He <i>was writing</i> a letter to his mother when I came.	e.g.: He <i>had written</i> the letter to his mother by 7 o'clock (before I came) yesterday.	e.g.: He <i>had been writing</i> the letter to his mother for two hours (since 2 o'clock) yesterday.

Sequence of Tenses.

Indirect (Reported) Speech

(Послідовність/узгодження часів. Непряма мова)

Правило узгодження часів в англійській мові стосується підрядних додаткових речень, присудок яких виражений дієсловом у минулому часі (частіше в Past Indefinite). У таких випадках присудок підрядного додаткового речення також вживається в одному з минулих часів. Найчастіше це правило спрацьовує при перетворенні речень з прямої мови (із словами автора в Past Indefinite) у непряму.

e.g.: He said: "I **am** very busy" — He said that he **was** very busy.

She asked: "What **are** you **doing** there?" — She asked me what I **was doing** there.

Одночасність дій головного та підрядного речень виражається Past Indefinite або Past Continuous; передування дії в підрядному реченні дії головного речення виражається формою Past Perfect:

He said: "I saw this film last month" — He said that he had seen this film the previous month.

Майбутня дія в підрядному додатковому реченні виражається часом Future-in-the-Past (*should/would* + *інфінітив*) – Indefinite,

Continuous чи Perfect, залежно від обставин часу:

e.g.: She said: "I shall go there tomorrow". — She said she would go there the next day.

Пряма мова → Непряма мова

Present Indefinite → Past Indefinite

Present Continuous → Past Continuous

Present Perfect → Past Perfect

Present Perfect Continuous → Past Perfect Continuous

Past Indefinite → Past Perfect

Past Continuous → Past Continuous / Past Perfect Continuous

Past Perfect → **(не міняється)**

Past Perfect Continuous → **(не міняється)**

Future Indefinite → Future Indefinite-in-the-Past

Future Continuous → Future Continuous-in-the-Past

Future Perfect → Future Perfect-in-the-Past

Future Perfect Continuous → Future Perfect Continuous-in-the-Past

Головне речення	Підрядне речення			
Він сказав, що He said (that)	Indefinite	Continuous	Perfect	Perfect Continuous
	пише (взагалі)	пише (зараз)	написав (уже)	пише (вже 20 хв.)
	↓	↓	↓	↓
	wrote	was writing	had written	had been writing
	написав (вчора)	писав (о 7 год. вчора)	написав (до 7 год. вчора)	писав (уже 2 год., коли...)
	↓	↓	↓	↓
	had written	was writing / had been writing	had written	had been writing
	напише (завтра)	буде писати (завтра о 7 год.)	напише (до 7 год. завтра)	буде писати (уже 2 год., коли...)
	↓	↓	↓	↓
	would write	would be writing	would have written	would have been writing

Правило послідовності часів не виконується:

1. Коли мова йде про якусь “вічну”, абсолютну істину:

The teacher said, “London is the capital of Great Britain”. — The teacher said that London is the capital of Great Britain.

2. Коли в підрядному реченні точно зазначено час виконання дії:

He said, “I was there in 1995.” — He said that he was there in 1995.

При перетворенні прямої мови у непряму прислівники місця, часу та вказівні займенники змінюються таким чином:

Пряма мова:

now
here
this, these
today
tomorrow
yesterday
next week/month/year
last week
last year

Непряма мова:

then
there
that, those
that day
next day, the following day
the day before, the previous day
the next week/month/year
the previous week
the year before

Приклади перетворення прямої мови у непряму:

Розповідне речення:

He said,
“You are pretty”. →
“You dance well” →
“She has got lovely hair” →
“I’ll never forget this day” →

He said (that)
I was pretty
I danced well
she had got lovely hair
he would never forget that day

Питальне речення:

He asked,
“Do you like ballet?” →
“Have you ever been to Kyiv?” →
“Where does he study?” →
“What are you reading?” →
“When shall we meet again?” →
“Why don’t you stay longer?” →

He asked (me, us, them, him...) if
(whether)
I liked ballet.
I had ever been to Kyiv.
He asked (me, us, them, him...) where he studied.
what I was reading.
when I should meet him again.
why I didn’t stay longer

Спонукальне речення:

He said,
“**Give** me your telephone number”
“**Ring** me **up** tomorrow.” →
“**Help** me to translate the text.” →
“**Don’t buy** ice-cream.” →

He asked (me, us, them, him...)
to give him my telephone number.
to ring him **up** next day.
to help him to translate the text.
not to buy ice-cream.

Modal Verbs (модальні дієслова)

Модальні дієслова не мають усіх основних форм, властивих іншим дієсловам (наприклад, закінчення –s в третій особі однини в Present Indefinite, форми інфінітива з часткою to, дієприкметника і герундія), не виражають, як всі інші дієслова, дії чи стану, а лише можливість, необхідність, бажаність, сумнів, дозвіл, заборону, здатність до виконання дії, позначеної інфінітивом. Відповідно, вони вживаються не самотійно, а лише в сполученні з інфінітивом іншого дієслова (частіше без частки to).

Модальні дієслова: **can (could)** (могти, уміти), **may (might)** (мати дозвіл), **must** (бути зобов’язаним), **ought (to)/should** (порада), **shall** (погроза, попередження), **will/would** (наполегливість, рішучість, впертість). Дієслова **need** (потребувати), **dare** (наважуватися) можуть вживатися і як модальні, і як смислові.

Can (минулий час – **could**, майбутній час – еквівалент **to be able** (бути спроможним) з інфінітивом основного дієслова з часткою **to**). Вираз **to be able** іноді вживається також відносно теперішнього та минулого часу: e.g.: I’d like to be able to make friends easily.

Can означає:

- фізичну або розумову здатність, вміння чи можливість виконати якусь дію в теперішньому чи минулому часі:

e.g.: I can speak English.

- дозвіл або заборону:

e.g.: You can use my book. You can't do it.

May (минулий час – **might**; майбутній час – еквівалент **to be allowed** з інфінітивом дієслова з часткою **to**).

May означає:

- дозвіл (як і дієслово can):

e.g.: You may go for a walk. May I take your pen?

- можливість виконання дії:

e.g.: You may get there by tram.

May також використовується:

- для вираження ввічливого прохання:
e.g.: Might I speak a word to you?
- для вираження докору, осуду, несхвалення:
e.g.: You might be more polite.

Must вживається лише в теперішньому часі, а, для вираження минулого та майбутнього часу вживається його еквівалент **to have** з інфінітивом основного дієслова з часткою **to**.

Must означає:

- загальний обов'язок, необхідність (у стверджувальних і питальних реченнях):
e.g.: You must not be late for classes.
- заборону у заперечних реченнях:
e.g.: You must not come back home so late.

Еквівалентами дієслова **must** є:

- 1) **to have (to)** — виражає необхідність, пов'язану з ситуацією, обставинами:
e.g.: I have to stay at home today.
- 2) **to be to** — виражає необхідність, пов'язану з планом, розкладом, попередньою домовленістю:
e.g.: I was to be there at 5 o'clock.

Mustn't виражає категоричну заборону виконувати дію: e.g.: You **mustn't** cross the street at the red light. **Needn't** виражає відсутність необхідності виконання дії (e.g.: You **needn't** read this text now.) і зазвичай використовується у відповіді на запитання типу *Must I learn the poem by heart?* – *No, you needn't.*

Should (ought to) виражають пораду, моральний обов'язок:

e.g.: You look bad, you should consult the doctor. My friend is in hospital and I ought to visit him.

The Verbals (Non-Finite Forms Of The Verb) **(Неособові форми дієслова)**

Неособові форми дієслова (інфінітив, герундій, дієприкметник) називають дію взагалі, не співвідносячи її з підметом речення, отже не можуть виступати в ролі присудка. Інфінітив та герундій мають властивості дієслова та іменника, дієприкметник I та II – дієслова та прикметника / прислівника.

Форми інфінітива:

	Active voice	Passive Voice
Non-Perfect form	to write to be writing*	to be written
Perfect form	to have written to have been writing*	to have been written

* - тривала дія

Форми герундія та дієприкметника I:

	Active voice	Passive Voice
Non-Perfect form	writing	being written
Perfect form	having written	having been written

Дієприкметник II – V_{ed}; V₃: written (написаний), locked (зачинений).

Неособові форми дієслова можуть називати дії, **одночасні** з дією присудка (неперфектні форми), або дії, що **передують** дії присудка (перфектні форми).

Значення часових форм неособових форм дієслова:

	Дії, одночасні з часом особового дієслова	Дії, попередні до дії особового дієслова
Інфінітив	It is pleasant to sit on the bank with nothing at all to be done .	I am sorry to have spoken to you rudely.
Герундій	What is the use of worrying ?	I'm proud of having behaved so well.
Дієприкметник I	The dog ran barking .	Having finished the letter, I left the room.
Дієприкметник II	The English language spoken today is very different from the English language spoken long before.	

Властивості герундія.

Герундій – це неособова форма дієслова, що має властивості дієслова та іменника.

Іменникові риси герундія:

1) вживається з присвійним займенником:

e.g: Do you mind my opening the window?

2) як і перед іменником, перед герундієм може вживатися прийменник:

He insisted on going there.

Дієслівні риси герундія:

- 1) герундій перехідних дієслів вживається з прямим додатком:
She is fond of reading books.
- 2) герундій, як і дієслово, може бути означений прислівником:
They continued listening attentively.

Дієслова, після яких вживається герундій:

Accuse of (звинувачувати), admit (допускати), afraid of (боятися), agree to (погоджуватися), apologize for (вибачатися), approve of (схвалювати), avoid (уникати), be busy / be engaged in (бути зайнятим), be used to (звикати щось робити), be in favour of (бути за), be on the point of (збиратися), cannot help (не можу не), cannot stand (терпіти не можу), consider (розглядати), congratulate on (вітати), carry on / continue / go on / keep on (продовжувати), delay (відкладати), dream of (мріяти), deny (заперечувати), depend on (залежати), enjoy / be fond of (захоплюватися), excuse for (вибачати), fancy (уявляти), (I don't) feel like (не)подобатися), finish (закінчувати), forget (забувати), forgive for (прощати), have smth to do with (мати щось спільне з) leave off / give up / stop (перестати робити), imagine (уявляти), instead of (замість), intend (мати намір), insist on (наполягати), be interested in (бути зацікавленим в чомусь), involve (залучати), look forward to (з нетерпінням чекати), like (любити, подобатися), mind / object to (заперечувати), practise (практикувати), propose / suggest (пропонувати) prevent from / stop from (перешкодити зробити), prefer (віддавати перевагу), put off / postpone (відкладати), refuse (відмовлятися), remember (пам'ятати), require / need / want (вимагати, потребувати), regret (шкодувати), risk (ризикувати), start / begin (почати), sure of (впевнений в), succeed in (мати успіх у чомусь), surprised at (здивований чимось), suspect of (запідозрювати в чомусь), think of (думати про), there's no need (use) in (немає потреби робити), there's (it's) no use (немає сенсу), warn against (попереджувати (про небезпеку), without (не зробивши чогось), wonder at (дивуватися з приводу чогось).

В українській мові немає форми, яка відповідала б герундію, тому його значення передається віддієслівним іменником, інфінітивом, підрядним реченням та іншими способами.

**Complex Object
(конструкція “Складний додаток”)**

В англійській мові, на відміну від української, є можливість вживати після деяких дієслів не підрядні речення, а комплекси з неособовими формами дієслова (інфінітивом, дієприкметником).

Конструкція **Complex Object** складається з двох компонентів:

а) іменника в загальному відмінку (Ann, Pete, students) або займенника в об'єктному відмінку (her, him, them);

б) інфінітива чи дієприкметника (Participle I, Participle II).

Залежно від того, чим виражений другий компонент цього комплексу – інфінітивом чи дієприкметником – комплекс називається **інфінітивним** чи **дієприкметниковим**.

e.g.: I saw her (Ann, the students) cross (crossing) the street.

Інфінітивна конструкція (Objective Infinitive Complex) вживається після дієслів що виражають:

1) сприйняття органами чуттів – to see, to hear, to watch, to observe (спостерігати). Після цих дієслів інфінітив вживається без частки **to**:

I heard the woman sing in the room.

2) розумову діяльність: to know (знати), to consider (вважати), to think (думати), to suppose, to assume, to believe, to find, to feel (останні п'ять дієслів у складі цього комплексу вживаються у значенні вважати, припускати). e.g.: I know him to speak Chinese well.

3) бажання, волевиявлення, емоції: to want (хотіти), to like, would like, to prefer (подобатися, віддавати перевагу), to hate (ненавидіти, не подобатися), to intend (мати намір). e.g.: I want her to help me. I would like you to go with me.

4) спонукання до дії (дозвіл, примус) – to let (дозволяти), to make, to force, to compel (примушувати) (після дієслів to let, to make інфінітив вживається без частки **to**), to advise (радити), to ask (просити). e.g.: He made me do it. They let us to go there.

Complex Subject (Subjective Infinitive Complex)

(Конструкція “складний підмет”: суб'єктний інфінітивний комплекс (конструкція “називний відмінок з інфінітивом))

Конструкція складається з двох компонентів:

а) іменника в загальному відмінку (Ann, Pete, students) чи займенника в називному відмінку (he, she, they);

б) інфінітива або дієприкметника (відповідно, комплекс буде називатися інфінітивним або дієприкметниковим).

e.g.: Ann (she) was heard to sing (singing).

Конструкція вживається після дієслів, що виражають:

1) мовленнєву діяльність (to say, to tell, to inform, etc.)

e.g.: He is said to be a famous actor.

2) фізичне сприйняття (to see, to hear, to observe)

e.g.: She was seen to cross the street.

3) розумову діяльність (to know, to consider, to think)

e.g.: Ann is considered to be a good teacher.

4) прохання, наказ, дозвіл (to make, to force, to ask)

e.g.: I was made to repeat the rule.

5) з деякими іншими дієсловами та словосполученнями (to appear, to seem, to happen, to prove, to turn out, to be (un)likely, etc.)

e.g.: The child seems to be asleep. He is likely to succeed. He proved to be a perfect dancer.

Дієслова, з якими вживається інфінітив:

afford; intend, promise; agree; like; try; arrange; manage; volunteer; decide; need; wait; expect; offer; want; hope; plan; would like

Дієслова, з якими вживається або інфінітив, або герундій:

begin/ start; like; stop*; hate; love; continue; go on; can't stand

*He stopped smoking (герундій) – Він кинув курити.

He stopped to smoke (інфінітив) – Він зупинився, щоб закурити.

Навчальне видання

Венкель Тетяна Василівна

**Англійська
мова
для студентів
вищих навчальних закладів**

Частина 2

Підписано до друку 23.01.2013 р. Формат 60х84 1/16.

Видавництво “Золоті литаври”

Україна, 58000, м. Чернівці, вул. Заводська, 26, а

Друк ПП Валь І. Д.